Abstract

This specification describes an application layer protocol for communication between a roaming authenticator and another client/platform, as well as bindings of this application protocol to a variety of transport protocols using different physical media. The application layer protocol defines requirements for such transport protocols. Each transport binding defines the details of how such transport layer connections should be set up, in a manner that meets the requirements of the application layer protocol.

Table of Contents

1 Introduction
  1.1 Relationship to Other Specifications

2 Conformance

3 Protocol Structure

4 Protocol Overview

5 Authenticator API
  5.1 authenticatorMakeCredential (0x01)
  5.2 authenticatorGetAssertion (0x02)
5.3 authenticatorGetNextAssertion (0x08)
5.3.1 Client Logic
5.4 authenticatorGetInfo (0x04)
5.5 authenticatorClientPIN (0x06)
5.5.1 Client PIN Support Requirements
5.5.2 Authenticator Configuration Operations Upon Power Up
5.5.3 Getting Retries from Authenticator
5.5.4 Getting sharedSecret from Authenticator
5.5.5 Setting a New PIN
5.5.6 Changing existing PIN
5.5.7 Getting pinToken from the Authenticator
5.5.8 Using pinToken
5.5.8.1 Using pinToken in authenticatorMakeCredential
5.5.8.2 Using pinToken in authenticatorGetAssertion
5.5.8.3 Without pinToken in authenticatorGetAssertion
5.5.9 authenticatorReset (0x07)

6 Message Encoding
6.1 Commands
6.2 Responses
6.3 Status codes

7 Interoperating with CTAP1/U2F authenticators
7.1 Framing of U2F commands
7.1.1 U2F Request Message Framing ### (#u2f-request-message-framing)
7.1.2 U2F Response Message Framing ### (#u2f-response-message-framing)
7.2 Using the CTAP2 authenticatorMakeCredential Command with CTAP1/U2F authenticators
7.3 Using the CTAP2 authenticatorGetAssertion Command with CTAP1/U2F authenticators

8 Transport-specific Bindings
8.1 USB Human Interface Device (USB HID)
8.1.1 Design rationale
8.1.2 Protocol structure and data framing
8.1.3 Concurrency and channels
8.1.4 Message and packet structure
8.1.5 Arbitration
8.1.5.1 Transaction atomicity, idle and busy states.
8.1.5.2 Transaction timeout
8.1.5.3 Transaction abort and re-synchronization
8.1.5.4 Packet sequencing
8.1.6 Channel locking
8.1.7 Protocol version and compatibility
8.1.8 HID device implementation
8.1.8.1 Interface and endpoint descriptors
8.1.8.2 HID report descriptor and device discovery
8.1.9 CTAPHID commands
8.1.9.1 Mandatory commands
8.1.9.1.1 CTAPHID_MSG (0x03)
8.1.9.1.2 CTAPHID_CBOR (0x10)
8.1.9.1.3 CTAPHID_INIT (0x06)
8.1.9.1.4 CTAPHID_PING (0x01)
8.1.9.1.5 CTAPHID_CANCEL (0x11)
8.1.9.1.6 CTAPHID_ERROR (0x3F)
8.1.9.7 CTAPHID_KEEPALIVE (0x3B)

8.1.9.2 Optional commands

8.1.9.2.1 CTAPHID_WINK (0x08)

8.1.9.2.2 CTAPHID_LOCK (0x04)

8.1.9.3 Vendor specific commands

8.2 ISO7816, ISO14443 and Near Field Communication (NFC)

8.2.1 Conformance

8.2.2 Protocol

8.2.3 Applet selection

8.2.4 Framing

8.2.4.1 Commands

8.2.4.2 Response

8.2.5 Fragmentation

8.2.6 Commands

8.2.6.1 NFCCTAP_MSG (0x10)

8.2.6.2 NFCCTAP_GETRESPONSE (0x11)

8.3 Bluetooth Smart / Bluetooth Low Energy Technology

8.3.1 Conformance

8.3.2 Pairing

8.3.3 Link Security

8.3.4 Framing

8.3.4.1 Request from Client to Authenticator

8.3.4.2 Response from Authenticator to Client

8.3.4.3 Command, Status, and Error constants

8.3.5 GATT Service Description

8.3.5.1 FIDO Service

8.3.5.2 Device Information Service

8.3.5.3 Generic Access Profile Service

8.3.6 Protocol Overview

8.3.7 Authenticator Advertising Format

8.3.8 Requests

8.3.9 Responses

8.3.10 Framing fragmentation

8.3.11 Notifications

8.3.12 Implementation Considerations

8.3.12.1 Bluetooth pairing: Client considerations

8.3.12.2 Bluetooth pairing: Authenticator considerations

8.3.13 Handling command completion

8.3.14 Data throughput

8.3.15 Advertising

8.3.16 Authenticator Address Type

9 Defined Extensions

9.1 HMAC Secret Extension (hmac-secret)

10 IANA Considerations

10.1 WebAuthn Extension Identifier Registrations

11 Security Considerations

Index

Terms defined by this specification
Terms defined by reference
This section is not normative.

This protocol is intended to be used in scenarios where a user interacts with a relying party (a website or native app) on some platform (e.g., a PC) which prompts the user to interact with a roaming authenticator (e.g., a smartphone).

In order to provide evidence of user interaction, a roaming authenticator implementing this protocol is expected to have a mechanism to obtain a user gesture. Possible examples of user gestures include: as a consent button, password, a PIN, a biometric or a combination of these.

Prior to executing this protocol, the client/platform (referred to as \textit{host} hereafter) and roaming authenticator (referred to as \textit{authenticator} hereafter) must establish a confidential and mutually authenticated data transport channel. This specification does not specify the details of how such a channel is established, nor how transport layer security must be achieved.

1. Introduction§

This specification is part of the FIDO2 project which includes this CTAP and the \cite{FIDOServerGuidelines} specifications, and is related to the W3C \cite{WebAuthN} specification. This specification refers to two CTAP protocol versions:

1. The CTAP1/U2F protocol, which is defined by the U2F Raw Messages specification \cite{U2FRawMsgs}. CTAP1/U2F messages are recognizable by their APDU-like binary structure. CTAP1/U2F may also be referred to as CTAP 1.2 or U2F 1.2. The latter was the U2F specification version used as the basis for several portions of this specification. Authenticators implementing CTAP1/U2F are typically referred to as U2F authenticators or CTAP1 authenticators.

2. The CTAP2 protocol, whose messages are encoded in the CTAP2 canonical CBOR encoding form. Authenticators implementing CTAP2 are referred to as CTAP2 authenticators, FIDO2 authenticators, or WebAuthn Authenticators.

Both CTAP1 and CTAP2 share the same underlying transports: USB Human Interface Device (USB HID), Near Field Communication (NFC), and Bluetooth Smart / Bluetooth Low Energy Technology (BLE).

The \cite{U2FUsbHid}, \cite{U2FNfc}, \cite{U2FBle}, and \cite{U2FRawMsgs} specifications, specifically, are superseded by this specification.

Occasionally, the term "CTAP" may be used without clarifying whether it is referring to CTAP1 or CTAP2. In such cases, it should be understood to be referring to the entirety of this specification or portions of this specification that are not specific to either CTAP1 or CTAP2. For example, some error messages begin with the term "CTAP" without clarifying whether they are CTAP1- or CTAP2-specific because they are applicable to both CTAP protocol versions. CTAP protocol-specific error messages are prefixed with either "CTAP1" or "CTAP2" as appropriate.

Using CTAP2 with CTAP1/U2F authenticators is defined in \cite{Interoperating with CTAP1/U2F authenticators}. 

2. Conformance§
As well as sections marked as non-normative, all authoring guidelines, diagrams, examples, and notes in this specification are non-normative. Everything else in this specification is normative.

The key words "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "NOT RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" in this specification are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].

3. Protocol Structure §

This protocol is specified in three parts:

- **Authenticator API**: At this level of abstraction, each authenticator operation is defined similarly to an API call - it accepts input parameters and returns either an output or error code. Note that this API level is conceptual and does not represent actual APIs. The actual APIs will be provided by each implementing platform.

- **Message Encoding**: In order to invoke a method in the authenticator API, the host must construct and encode a request and send it to the authenticator over the chosen transport protocol. The authenticator will then process the request and return an encoded response.

- **Transport-specific Binding**: Requests and responses are conveyed to roaming authenticators over specific transports (e.g., USB, NFC, Bluetooth). For each transport technology, message bindings are specified for this protocol.

This document specifies all three of the above pieces for roaming FIDO2 authenticators.

4. Protocol Overview §

The general protocol between a platform and an authenticator is as follows:

1. Platform establishes the connection with the authenticator.
2. Platform gets information about the authenticator using authenticatorGetInfo command, which helps it determine the capabilities of the authenticator.
3. Platform sends a command for an operation if the authenticator is capable of supporting it.
4. Authenticator replies with response data or error.

5. Authenticator API §

Each operation in the authenticator API can be performed independently of the others, and all operations are asynchronous. The authenticator may enforce a limit on outstanding operations to limit resource usage - in this case, the authenticator is expected to return a busy status and the host is expected to retry the operation later. Additionally, this protocol does not enforce in-order or reliable delivery of requests and responses; if these properties are desired, they must be provided by the underlying transport protocol or implemented at a higher layer by applications.

Note that this API level is conceptual and does not represent actual APIs. The actual APIs will be provided by each implementing platform.

The authenticator API has the following methods and data structures.

5.1. authenticatorMakeCredential (0x01) §

This method is invoked by the host to request generation of a new credential in the authenticator. It takes the following input parameters, which explicitly correspond to those defined in The authenticatorMakeCredential
operation section of the Web Authentication specification:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter name</th>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Required?</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clientDataHash</td>
<td>Byte Array</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Hash of the ClientData contextual binding specified by host. See [WebAuthN].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rp</td>
<td>PublicKeyCredentialRpEntity</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>This PublicKeyCredentialRpEntity data structure describes a Relying Party with which the new public key credential will be associated. It contains the Relying party identifier, (optionally) a human-friendly RP name, and (optionally) a URL referencing a RP icon image. The RP name is to be used by the authenticator when displaying the credential to the user for selection and usage authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user</td>
<td>PublicKeyCredentialUserEntity</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>This PublicKeyCredentialUserEntity data structure describes the user account to which the new public key credential will be associated at the RP. It contains an RP-specific user account identifier, (optionally) a user name, (optionally) a user display name, and (optionally) a URL referencing a user icon image (of a user avatar, for example). The authenticator associates the created public key credential with the account identifier, and MAY also associate any or all of the user name, user display name, and image data (pointed to by the URL, if any).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pubKeyCredParams</td>
<td>CBOR Array</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>A sequence of CBOR maps consisting of pairs of PublicKeyCredentialType (a string) and cryptographic algorithm (a positive or negative integer), where algorithm identifiers are values that SHOULD be registered in the IANA COSE Algorithms registry [IANA-COSE-ALGS-REG].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This sequence is ordered from most preferred (by the RP) to least preferred.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>excludeList</th>
<th>Sequence of PublicKeyCredentialDescriptors</th>
<th>Optional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A sequence of PublicKeyCredentialDescriptor structures, as specified in [WebAuthN]. The authenticator returns an error if the authenticator already contains one of the credentials enumerated in this sequence. This allows RPs to limit the creation of multiple credentials for the same account on a single authenticator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>extensions</th>
<th>CBOR map of extension identifier → authenticator extension input values</th>
<th>Optional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameters to influence authenticator operation, as specified in [WebAuthN]. These parameters might be authenticator specific.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>options</th>
<th>Map of authenticator options</th>
<th>Optional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parameters to influence authenticator operation, as specified in the table below.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pinAuth</th>
<th>Byte Array</th>
<th>Optional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First 16 bytes of HMAC-SHA-256 of clientDataHash using pinToken which platform got from the authenticator: HMAC-SHA-256(pinToken, clientDataHash).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pinProtocol</th>
<th>Unsigned Integer</th>
<th>Optional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PIN protocol version chosen by the client</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following values are defined for use in the options parameter. All options are booleans.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rk</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>resident key: Instructs the authenticator to store the key material on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uv</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>user verification: Instructs the authenticator to require a gesture that verifies the user to complete the request. Examples of such gestures are fingerprint scan or a PIN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the [WebAuthN] specification defines an abstract authenticatorMakeCredential operation, which corresponds to the operation described in this section. The parameters in the abstract [WebAuthN] authenticatorMakeCredential operation map to the above parameters as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[WebAuthN] authenticatorMakeCredential operation</th>
<th>CTAP authenticatorMakeCredential operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hash</td>
<td>clientDataHash</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When an authenticatorMakeCredential request is received, the authenticator performs the following procedure:

1. If the excludeList parameter is present and contains a credential ID that is present on this authenticator and bound to the specified rpId, wait for user presence, then terminate this procedure and return error code CTAP2_ERR_CREDENTIAL_EXCLUDED. User presence check is required for CTAP2 authenticators before the RP gets told that the token is already registered to behave similarly to CTAP1/U2F authenticators.

2. If the pubKeyCredParams parameter does not contain a valid COSEAlgorithmIdentifier value that is supported by the authenticator, terminate this procedure and return error code CTAP2_ERR_UNSUPPORTED_ALGORITHM.

3. If the options parameter is present, process all the options. If the option is known but not supported, terminate this procedure and return CTAP2_ERR_UNSUPPORTED_OPTION. If the option is known but not valid for this command, terminate this procedure and return CTAP2_ERR_INVALID_OPTION. Ignore any options that are not understood. Note that because this specification defines normative behaviors for them, all authenticators MUST understand the "rk", "up", and "uv" options.

4. Optionally, if the extensions parameter is present, process any extensions that this authenticator supports. Authenticator extension outputs generated by the authenticator extension processing are returned in the authenticator data.

5. If pinAuth parameter is present and pinProtocol is 1, verify it by matching it against first 16 bytes of HMAC-SHA-256 of clientDataHash parameter using pinToken: HMAC-SHA-256(pinToken, clientDataHash).
   - If the verification succeeds, set the "uv" bit to 1 in the response.
   - If the verification fails, return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_INVALID error.

6. If pinAuth parameter is not present and clientPin been set on the authenticator, return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_REQUIRED error.

7. If pinAuth parameter is present and the pinProtocol is not supported, return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_INVALID.

8. If the authenticator has a display, show the items contained within the user and rp parameter structures to the user. Alternatively, request user interaction in an authenticator-specific way (e.g., flash the LED light). Request permission to create a credential. If the user declines permission, return the CTAP2_ERR_OPERATION_DENIED error.

9. Generate a new credential key pair for the algorithm specified.

10. If "rk" in options parameter is set to true:
On success, the authenticator returns an attestation object in its response as defined in [WebAuthN]:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member name</th>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Required?</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authData</td>
<td>Byte Array</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>The authenticator data object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fmt</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>The attestation statement format identifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attStmt</td>
<td>Byte Array, the structure of which depends on the attestation statement format identifier</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>The attestation statement, whose format is identified by the “fmt” object member. The client treats it as an opaque object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2. authenticatorGetAssertion (0x02)

This method is used by a host to request cryptographic proof of user authentication as well as user consent to a given transaction, using a previously generated credential that is bound to the authenticator and relying party identifier. It takes the following input parameters, which explicitly correspond to those defined in The authenticatorGetAssertion operation section of the Web Authentication specification:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter name</th>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Required?</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rpId</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Relying party identifier. See [WebAuthN].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clientDataHash</td>
<td>Byte Array</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Hash of the serialized client data collected by the host. See [WebAuthN].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allowList</td>
<td>Sequence of PublicKeyCredentialDescriptors</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>A sequence of PublicKeyCredentialDescriptor structures, each denoting a credential, as specified in [WebAuthN]. If this parameter is present and has 1 or more entries, the authenticator MUST only generate an assertion using one of the denoted credentials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extensions</td>
<td>CBOR map of extension identifier → authenticator extension input values</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Parameters to influence authenticator operation. These parameters might be authenticator specific.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
options | Map of authenticator options | Optional | authenticator operation, as specified in the table below.
---|---|---|---
pinAuth | Byte Array | Optional | First 16 bytes of HMAC-SHA-256 of clientDataHash using pinToken which platform got from the authenticator: HMAC-SHA-256(pinToken, clientDataHash).
pinProtocol | Unsigned Integer | Optional | PIN protocol version selected by client.

The following values are defined for use in the options parameter. All options are booleans.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>up</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>user presence: Instructs the authenticator to require user consent to complete the operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uv</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>user verification: Instructs the authenticator to require a gesture that verifies the user to complete the request. Examples of such gestures are fingerprint scan or a PIN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the [WebAuthN] specification defines an abstract authenticatorGetAssertion operation, which corresponds to the operation described in this section. The parameters in the abstract [WebAuthN] authenticatorGetAssertion operation map to the above parameters as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[WebAuthN] authenticatorGetAssertion operation</th>
<th>CTAP authenticatorGetAssertion operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hash</td>
<td>clientDataHash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpId</td>
<td>rpId</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allowCredentialDescriptorList</td>
<td>allowList</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requireUserPresence</td>
<td>options.up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requireUserVerification</td>
<td>options.uv or pinAuth/pinProtocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extensions</td>
<td>extensions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When an authenticatorGetAssertion request is received, the authenticator performs the following procedure:

1. Locate all credentials that are eligible for retrieval under the specified criteria:
   - If an allowList is present and is non-empty, locate all denoted credentials present on this authenticator and bound to the specified rpId.
   - If an allowList is not present, locate all credentials that are present on this authenticator and bound to the specified rpId.
   - Let numberOfCredentials be the number of credentials found.

2. If pinAuth parameter is present and pinProtocol is 1, verify it by matching it against first 16 bytes of HMAC-SHA-256 of clientDataHash parameter using pinToken: HMAC-SHA-256(pinToken, clientDataHash).
   - If the verification succeeds, set the "uv" bit to 1 in the response.
   - If the verification fails, return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_INVALID error.

3. If pinAuth parameter is present and the pinProtocol is not supported, return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_INVALID.
4. If `pinAuth` parameter is not present and `clientPin` has been set on the authenticator, set the "uv" bit to 0 in the response.

5. If the options parameter is present, process all the options. If the option is known but not supported, terminate this procedure and return CTAP2_ERR_UNSUPPORTED_OPTION. If the option is known but not valid for this command, terminate this procedure and return CTAP2_ERR_INVALID_OPTION. Ignore any options that are not understood. Note that because this specification defines normative behaviors for them, all authenticators MUST understand the "rk", "up", and "uv" options.

6. Optionally, if the extensions parameter is present, process any extensions that this authenticator supports. Authenticator extension outputs generated by the authenticator extension processing are returned in the authenticator data.

7. Collect user consent if required. This step MUST happen before the following steps due to privacy reasons (i.e., authenticator cannot disclose existence of a credential until the user interacted with the device):
   - If the "uv" option was specified and set to true:
     - If device doesn't support user-identifiable gestures, return the CTAP2_ERR_UNSUPPORTED_OPTION error.
     - Collect a user-identifiable gesture. If gesture validation fails, return the CTAP2_ERR_OPERATION_DENIED error.
     - If the "up" option was specified and set to true, collect the user's consent.
       - If no consent is obtained and a timeout occurs, return the CTAP2_ERR_OPERATION_DENIED error.

8. If no credentials were located in step 1, return CTAP2_ERR_NO_CREDENTIALS.

9. If more than one credential was located in step 1, order the credentials by the time when they were created in reverse order. The first credential is the most recent credential that was created.

10. If authenticator does not have a display:
    - Remember the authenticatorGetAssertion parameters.
    - Create a credential counter(`credentialCounter`) and set it 1. This counter signifies how many credentials are sent to the platform by the authenticator.
    - Start a timer. This is used during authenticatorGetNextAssertion command. This step is optional if transport is done over NFC.
    - Update the response to include the first credential's publicKeyCredentialUserEntity information and `numberOfCredentials`. User identifiable information (name, DisplayName, icon) inside publicKeyCredentialUserEntity MUST not be returned if user verification is not done by the authenticator.

11. If authenticator has a display:
    - Display all these credentials to the user, using their friendly name along with other stored account information.
    - Also, display the `rpId` of the requester (specified in the request) and ask the user to select a credential.
    - If the user declines to select a credential or takes too long (as determined by the authenticator), terminate this procedure and return the CTAP2_ERR_OPERATION_DENIED error.

12. Sign the `clientDataHash` along with `authData` with the selected credential, using the structure specified in WebAuthN.

On success, the authenticator returns the following structure in its response:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member name</th>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Required?</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PublicKeyCredentialDescriptor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Requirements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credential</td>
<td>PublicKeyCredentialDescriptor</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>structure containing the credential identifier whose private key was used to generate the assertion. May be omitted if the allowList has exactly one Credential.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authData</td>
<td>Byte Array</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The signed-over contextual bindings made by the authenticator, as specified in [WebAuthN].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signature</td>
<td>Byte Array</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The assertion signature produced by the authenticator, as specified in [WebAuthN].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user</td>
<td>PublicKeyCredentialUserEntity</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PublicKeyCredentialUserEntity structure containing the user account information. User identifiable information (name, DisplayName, icon) MUST not be returned if user verification is not done by the authenticator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U2F Devices: For U2F devices, this parameter is not returned as this user information is not present for U2F credentials.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FIDO Devices - server resident credentials: For server resident credentials on FIDO devices, this parameter is optional as server resident credentials behave same as U2F credentials where they are discovered given the user information on the RP. Authenticators optionally MAY store user information inside the credential ID.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FIDO devices - device resident credentials: For device resident keys on FIDO devices, at least user &quot;id&quot; is mandatory.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For single account per RP case, authenticator returns &quot;id&quot; field to the platform which will be returned to the [WebAuthN] layer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For multiple accounts per RP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Within the "flags" bits of the authenticator data structure returned, the authenticator will report what was actually done within the authenticator boundary. The meanings of the combinations of the User Present (UP) and User Verified (UV) flags are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flags</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;up&quot;=0 &quot;uv&quot;=0</td>
<td>Silent authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;up&quot;=1 &quot;uv&quot;=0</td>
<td>Physical user presence verified, but no user verification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;up&quot;=0 &quot;uv&quot;=1</td>
<td>User verification performed, but physical user presence not verified (a typical &quot;smartcard scenario&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;up&quot;=1 &quot;uv&quot;=1</td>
<td>User verification performed and physical user presence verified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3. authenticatorGetNextAssertion (0x08)

The client calls this method when the authenticatorGetAssertion response contains the numberOfCredentials member and the number of credentials exceeds 1. This method is used to obtain the next per-credential signature for a given authenticatorGetAssertion request.

This method takes no arguments as it is always follows a call to authenticatorGetAssertion or authenticatorGetNextAssertion.

When such a request is received, the authenticator performs the following procedure:

1. If authenticator does not remember any authenticatorGetAssertion parameters, return CTAP2_ERR_NOT_ALLOWED.
2. If the credentialCounter is equal to or greater than numberOfCredentials, return CTAP2_ERR_NOT_ALLOWED.
3. If timer since the last call to authenticatorGetAssertion/authenticatorGetNextAssertion is greater than 30 seconds, discard the current authenticatorGetAssertion state and return CTAP2_ERR_NOT_ALLOWED. This step is optional if transport is done over NFC.

4. Sign the clientDataHash along with authData with the credential using credentialCounter as index (e.g., credentials[n] assuming 0-based array), using the structure specified in [WebAuthN].

5. Reset the timer. This step is optional if transport is done over NFC.

6. Increment credentialCounter.

On success, the authenticator returns the same structure as returned by the authenticatorGetAssertion method. The numberOfCredentials member is omitted.

5.3.1. Client Logic

If client receives numberOfCredentials member value exceeding 1 in response to the authenticatorGetAssertion call:

1. Call authenticatorGetNextAssertion numberOfCredentials minus 1 times.
   - Make sure ‘rp’ member matches the current request.
   - Remember the ‘response’ member.
   - Add credential user information to the ‘credentialInfo’ list.

2. Draw a UX that displays credentialInfo list.

3. Let user select which credential to use.

4. Return the value of the ‘response’ member associated with the user choice.

5. Discard all other responses.

5.4. authenticatorGetInfo (0x04)

Using this method, the host can request that the authenticator report a list of all supported protocol versions, supported extensions, AAGUID of the device, and its capabilities. This method takes no inputs.

On success, the authenticator returns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member name</th>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Required?</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>versions</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>List of supported versions. Supported versions are: “FIDO_2_0” for CTAP2 / FIDO2 / Web Authentication authenticators and “U2F_V2” for CTAP1/U2F authenticators.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extensions</td>
<td>Sequence of strings</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>List of supported extensions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaguid</td>
<td>Byte String</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>The claimed AAGUID. 16 bytes in length and encoded the same as MakeCredential AuthenticatorData, as specified in [WebAuthN].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>options</td>
<td>Map</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>List of supported options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxMsgSize</td>
<td>Unsigned Integer</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Maximum message size supported by the authenticator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
All options are in the form key-value pairs with string IDs and boolean values. When an option is not present, the default is applied per table below. The following is a list of supported options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option ID</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plat</td>
<td>platform device: Indicates that the device is attached to the client and therefore can't be removed and used on another client.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rk</td>
<td>resident key: Indicates that the device is capable of storing keys on the device itself and therefore can satisfy the authenticatorGetAssertion request with allowList parameter not specified or empty.</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| clientPin | Client PIN:  
If present and set to true, it indicates that the device is capable of accepting a PIN from the client and PIN has been set.  
If present and set to false, it indicates that the device is capable of accepting a PIN from the client and PIN has not been set yet.  
If absent, it indicates that the device is not capable of accepting a PIN from the client.  
Client PIN is one of the ways to do user verification. | Not supported |
| up        | user presence: Indicates that the device is capable of testing user presence. | true   |
| uv        | user verification: Indicates that the device is capable of verifying the user within itself. For example, devices with UI, biometrics fall into this category.  
If present and set to true, it indicates that the device is capable of user verification within itself and has been configured.  
If present and set to false, it indicates that the device is capable of user verification within itself and has not been yet configured. For example, a biometric device that has not yet been configured will return this parameter set to false.  
If absent, it indicates that the device is not capable of user verification within itself.  
A device that can only do Client PIN will not return the "uv" parameter.  
If a device is capable of verifying the user within itself as well as able to do Client PIN, it will return both "uv" and the Client PIN option. | Not Supported |

5.5. authenticatorClientPIN (0x06)

One of the design goals of this command is to have minimum burden on the authenticator and to not send actual encrypted PIN to the authenticator in normal authenticator usage scenarios to have more security. Hence, below design only sends PIN in encrypted format while setting or changing a PIN. On normal PIN usage scenarios, design uses randomized `pinToken` which gets generated every power cycle.
This command is used by the platform to establish key agreement with authenticator and getting sharedSecret setting a new PIN on the authenticator, changing existing PIN on the authenticator and getting "pinToken" from the authenticator which can be used in subsequent authenticatorMakeCredential and authenticatorGetAssertion operations.

It takes the following input parameters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter name</th>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Required?</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pinProtocol</td>
<td>Unsigned Integer</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>PIN protocol version chosen by the client. For this version of the spec, this SHALL be the number 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subCommand</td>
<td>Unsigned Integer</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>The authenticator Client PIN sub command currently being requested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyAgreement</td>
<td>COSE_Key</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Public key of platformKeyAgreementKey. The COSE_Key-encoded public key MUST contain the optional &quot;alg&quot; parameter and MUST NOT contain any other optional parameters. The &quot;alg&quot; parameter MUST contain a COSEAlgorithmIdentifier value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinAuth</td>
<td>Byte Array</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>First 16 bytes of HMAC-SHA-256 of encrypted contents using sharedSecret. See Setting a new PIN, Changing existing PIN and Getting pinToken from the authenticator for more details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newPinEnc</td>
<td>Byte Array</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Encrypted new PIN using sharedSecret. Encryption is done over UTF-8 representation of new PIN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinHashEnc</td>
<td>Byte Array</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Encrypted first 16 bytes of SHA-256 of PIN using sharedSecret.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The list of sub commands for PIN Protocol Version 1 is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subCommand Name</th>
<th>subCommand Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>getRetries</td>
<td>0x01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getKeyAgreement</td>
<td>0x02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setPIN</td>
<td>0x03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changePIN</td>
<td>0x04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getPINToken</td>
<td>0x05</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On success, authenticator returns the following structure in its response:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter name</th>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Required?</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KeyAgreement</td>
<td>COSE_Key</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Authenticator key agreement public key in COSE_Key format. This will be used to establish a sharedSecret between platform and the authenticator. The COSE_Key-encoded public key MUST contain the optional &quot;alg&quot; parameter and MUST NOT contain any other optional parameters. The &quot;alg&quot; parameter MUST contain a COSEAlgorithmIdentifier value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pinToken</strong></td>
<td>Byte Array</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Encrypted \textit{pinToken} using \textit{sharedSecret} to be used in subsequent \textit{authenticatorMakeCredential} and \textit{authenticatorGetAssertion} operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>retries</strong></td>
<td>Unsigned Integer</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Number of PIN attempts remaining before lockout. This is optionally used to show in UI when collecting the PIN in \textit{Setting a new PIN}, \textit{Changing existing PIN} and \textit{Getting pinToken from the authenticator} flows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.5.1. Client PIN Support Requirements

- Platform has to fulfill following PIN support requirements while gathering input from the user:
  - Minimum PIN Length: 4 Unicode characters
  - Maximum PIN Length: UTF-8 representation must not exceed 255 bytes
- Authenticator has to fulfill following PIN support requirements:
  - Minimum PIN Length: 4 bytes
  - Maximum PIN Length: 255 bytes
  - Maximum consecutive incorrect PIN attempts: 8
    - \textit{retries} counter represents the number of attempts left before PIN is blocked.
    - Each correct PIN entry resets the \textit{retries} counter back to 8 unless the PIN is already blocked.
    - Each incorrect PIN entry decrements the \textit{retries} by 1.
    - Once the \textit{retries} counter reaches 0, the \textit{authenticator has to be reset} before any further operations can happen that require a PIN.
- PIN storage on the device has to be of the same or better security assurances as of private keys on the device.

Note: Authenticators can implement minimum PIN lengths that are longer than 4 characters.

5.5.2. Authenticator Configuration Operations Upon Power Up

Authenticator generates following configuration at power up. This is to have less burden on the authenticator as key agreement is an expensive operation. This also ensures randomness across power cycles.

Following are the operations authenticator performs on each powerup:

- Generate "\textit{authenticatorKeyAgreementKey}"
  - Generate an ECDH P-256 key pair called "\textit{authenticatorKeyAgreementKey}" denoted by \((a, aG)\) where \(a\) denotes the private key and \(aG\) denotes the public key.
    - See \[RFC6090\] Section 4.1 and \[SP800-56A\] for more ECDH key agreement protocol details.
- Generate "\textit{pinToken}"
  - Generate a random integer of length which is multiple of 16 bytes (AES block length).
  - "\textit{pinToken}" is used so that there is minimum burden on the authenticator and platform does not have to not send actual encrypted PIN to the authenticator in normal authenticator usage scenarios. This also provides more security as we are not sending actual PIN even in encrypted form. "\textit{pinToken}" will be given to the platform upon verification of the PIN to be used in subsequent \textit{authenticatorMakeCredential} and \textit{authenticatorGetAssertion} operations.
5.5.3. Getting Retries from Authenticator

Retries count is the number of attempts remaining before lockout. When the device is nearing authenticator lockout, the platform can optionally warn the user to be careful while entering the PIN.

Platform performs the following operations to get `retries`:

- Platform sends **authenticatorClientPIN** command with following parameters to the authenticator:
  - pinProtocol: 0x01
  - subCommand: getRetries(0x01)
- Authenticator responds back with `retries`.

5.5.4. Getting sharedSecret from Authenticator

Platform does the ECDH key agreement to arrive at sharedSecret to be used only during that transaction. Authenticator does not have to keep a list of sharedSecrets for all active sessions. If there are subsequent authenticatorClientPIN transactions, a new sharedSecret is generated every time.

Platform performs the following operations to arrive at the sharedSecret:

- Platform sends **authenticatorClientPIN** command with following parameters to the authenticator:
  - pinProtocol: 0x01
  - subCommand: getKeyAgreement(0x02)
- Authenticator responds back with public key of authenticatorKeyAgreementKey, "aG".
- Platform generates "platformKeyAgreementKey":
  - Platform generates ECDH P-256 key pair called "platformKeyAgreementKey" denoted by (b, bG) where "b" denotes the private key and "bG" denotes the public key.
- Platform generates "sharedSecret"
  - Platform generates "sharedSecret" using SHA-256 over ECDH key agreement protocol using private key of platformKeyAgreementKey, "b" and public key of authenticatorKeyAgreementKey, "aG": SHA-256((baG).x).
    - SHA-256 is done over only "x" curve point of baG.
    - See [RFC6090] Section 4.1 and appendix (C.2) of [SP800-56A] for more ECDH key agreement protocol details and key representation.

5.5.5. Setting a New PIN

Following operations are performed to set up a new PIN:

- Platform gets `sharedSecret` from the authenticator.
- Platform collects new PIN ("newPinUnicode") from the user in Unicode format.
  - Platform checks the Unicode character length of "newPinUnicode" against the minimum 4 Unicode character requirement and returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_POLICY_VIOLATION if the check fails.
  - Let "newPin" be the UTF-8 representation of "newPinUnicode".
  - Platform checks the byte length of "newPin" against the max UTF-8 representation limit of 255 bytes and returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_POLICY_VIOLATION if the check fails.
- Platform sends §5.5 authenticatorClientPIN (0x06) command with following parameters to the authenticator:
  - pinProtocol: 0x01.
Following operations are performed to change an existing PIN:

- subCommand: setPIN(0x03).
- keyAgreement: public key of platformKeyAgreementKey, "bG".
  - During encryption, newPin is padded with trailing 0x00 bytes and is of minimum 64 bytes length. This is to prevent leak of PIN length while communicating to the authenticator. There is no PKCS #7 padding used in this scheme.
  - The platform sends the first 16 bytes of the HMAC-SHA-256 result.
- Authenticator performs following operations upon receiving the request:
  - If Authenticator does not receive mandatory parameters for this command, it returns CTAP2_ERR_MISSING_PARAMETER error.
  - If a PIN has already been set, authenticator returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_INVALID error.
  - Authenticator generates "sharedSecret": SHA-256((abG).x) using private key of authenticatorKeyAgreementKey, "a" and public key of platformKeyAgreementKey, "bG".
    - SHA-256 is done over only "x" curve point of "abG"
    - See [RFC6090] Section 4.1 and appendix (C.2) of [SP800-56A] for more ECDH key agreement protocol details and key representation.
  - Authenticator verifies pinAuth by generating LEFT(HMAC-SHA-256(sharedSecret, newPinEnc), 16) and matching against input pinAuth parameter.
    - If pinAuth verification fails, authenticator returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_INVALID error.
  - Authenticator decrypts newPinEnc using above "sharedSecret" producing newPin and checks newPin length against minimum PIN length of 4 characters.
    - The decrypted padded newPin should be of at least 64 bytes length and authenticator determines actual PIN length by looking for first 0x00 byte which terminates the PIN.
    - If minimum PIN length check fails, authenticator returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_POLICY_VIOLATION error.
    - Authenticator may have additional constraints for PIN policy. The current spec only enforces minimum length of 4 characters.
  - Authenticator stores LEFT(SHA-256(newPin), 16) on the device, sets the retries counter to 8, and returns CTAP2_OK.

5.5.6. Changing existing PINs

Following operations are performed to change an existing PIN:

- Platform gets sharedSecret from the authenticator.
- Platform collects current PIN ("curPinUnicode") and new PIN ("newPinUnicode") from the user.
  - Platform checks the Unicode character length of "newPinUnicode" against the minimum 4 Unicode character requirement and returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_POLICY_VIOLATION if the check fails.
  - Let "curPin" be the UTF-8 representation of "curPinUnicode" and "newPin" be the UTF-8 representation of "newPinUnicode"
    - Platform checks the byte length of "curPin" and "newPin" against the max UTF-8 representation limit of 255 bytes and returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_POLICY_VIOLATION if the check fails.
  - Platform sends authenticatorClientPIN command with following parameters to the authenticator:
- pinProtocol: 0x01.
- subCommand: changePIN(0x04).
- keyAgreement: **public key of platformKeyAgreementKey, "bG"**.
- pinHashEnc: Encrypted first 16 bytes of SHA-256 hash of curPin using **sharedSecret**: AES256–CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, LEFT(SHA-256(curPin),16)).
  - During encryption, newPin is padded with trailing 0x00 bytes and is of minimum 64 bytes length. This is to prevent leak of PIN length while communicating to the authenticator. There is no PKCS #7 padding used in this scheme.
  - The platform sends the first 16 bytes of the HMAC-SHA-256 result.
- Authenticator performs following operations upon receiving the request:
  - If Authenticator does not receive mandatory parameters for this command, it returns CTAP2_ERR_MISSING_PARAMETER error.
  - If the **retries** counter is 0, return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_BLOCKED error.
  - Authenticator generates "sharedSecret": SHA-256((abG).x) using **private key of authenticatorKeyAgreementKey, "a"** and **public key of platformKeyAgreementKey, "bG"**.
    - SHA-256 is done over only "x" curve point of "abc"
    - See [RFC6090] Section 4.1 and appendix (C.2) of [SP800-56A] for more ECDH key agreement protocol details and key representation.
  - Authenticator verifies pinAuth by generating LEFT(HMAC-SHA-256(sharedSecret, newPinEnc || pinHashEnc), 16) and matching against input pinAuth parameter.
    - If pinAuth verification fails, authenticator returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_INVALID error.
  - Authenticator decrypts pinHashEnc and verifies against its internal stored LEFT(SHA-256(curPin), 16).
    - If a mismatch is detected, the authenticator performs the following operations:
      - Authenticator generates a new "**authenticatorKeyAgreementKey"**.
        - Generate a new ECDH P-256 key pair called "authenticatorKeyAgreementKey" denoted by (a, aG), where "a" denotes the private key and "aG" denotes the public key.
          - See [RFC6090] Section 4.1 and [SP800-56A] for more ECDH key agreement protocol details.
        - Authenticator decrements the **retries** counter by 1.
        - Authenticator returns errors according to following conditions:
          - If the **retries** counter is 0, return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_BLOCKED error.
          - If the authenticator sees 3 consecutive mismatches, it returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_BLOCKED, indicating that power cycling is needed for further operations. This is done so that malware running on the platform should not be able to block the device without user interaction.
      - Else return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_INVALID error.
  - Authenticator decrypts newPinEnc using above "sharedSecret" producing newPin and checks newPin length against minimum PIN length of 4 characters.
5.5.7. Getting pinToken from the Authenticator

This step only has to be performed once for the lifetime of the authenticator/platform handle. Getting pinToken once provides allows high security without any additional roundtrips every time (except for the first key-agreement phase) and its overhead is minimal.

Following operations are performed to get pinToken which will be used in subsequent authenticatorMakeCredential and authenticatorGetAssertion operations:

- Platform gets sharedSecret from the authenticator.
- Platform collects PIN from the user.
- Platform sends authenticatorClientPIN command with following parameters to the authenticator:
  - pinProtocol: 0x01.
  - subCommand: getPinToken(0x05).
  - keyAgreement: public key of platformKeyAgreementKey, "bG".
  - pinHashEnc: AES256–CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, LEFT(SHA–256(PIN), 16)).
- Authenticator performs following operations upon receiving the request:
  - If Authenticator does not receive mandatory parameters for this command, it returns CTAP2_ERR_MISSING_PARAMETER error.
  - If the retries counter is 0, return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_BLOCKED error.
  - Authenticator generates "sharedSecret": SHA–256("abG").x) using private key of authenticatorKeyAgreementKey, "a" and public key of platformKeyAgreementKey, "bG".
    - SHA–256 is done over only "x" curve point of "abG"
      - See [RFC6090] Section 4.1 and appendix (C.2) of [SP800-56A] for more ECDH key agreement protocol details and key representation.
    - Authenticator decrypts pinHashEnc and verifies against its internal stored LEFT(SHA–256(curPin), 16).
    - If a mismatch is detected, the authenticator performs the following operations:
      - Authenticator generates a new "authenticatorKeyAgreementKey".
        - Generate a new ECDH P-256 key pair called "authenticatorKeyAgreementKey" denoted by (a, aG), where "a" denotes the private key and "aG" denotes the public key.
        - See [RFC6090] Section 4.1 and [SP800-56A] for more ECDH key agreement protocol details.
        - Authenticator decrements the retries counter by 1.
        - Authenticator returns errors according to following conditions:
          - If the retries counter is 0, return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_BLOCKED error.
- If the authenticator sees 3 consecutive mismatches, it returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_BLOCKED, indicating that power cycling is needed for further operations. This is done so that malware running on the platform should not be able to block the device without user interaction.
- Else return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_INVALID error.
  - Authenticator returns encrypted pinToken using "sharedSecret": AES256-CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, pinToken).
  - pinToken should be a multiple of 16 bytes (AES block length) without any padding or IV. There is no PKCS #7 padding used in this scheme.

5.5.8. Using pinToken

Platform has the flexibility to manage the lifetime of pinToken based on the scenario however it should get rid of the pinToken as soon as possible when not required. Authenticator also can expire pinToken based on certain conditions like changing a PIN, timeout happening on authenticator, machine waking up from a suspend state etc. If pinToken has expired, authenticator will return CTAP2_ERR_PIN_TOKEN_EXPIRED and platform can act on the error accordingly.

5.5.8.1. Using pinToken in authenticatorMakeCredential

Following operations are performed to use pinToken in authenticatorMakeCredential API:

- Platform gets pinToken from the authenticator.
- Platform sends authenticatorMakeCredential command with following additional optional parameter:
  - pinProtocol: 0x01.
  - pinAuth: LEFT(HMAC-SHA-256(pinToken, clientDataHash), 16).
    - The platform sends the first 16 bytes of the HMAC-SHA-256 result.
  - Authenticator verifies pinAuth by generating LEFT(HMAC-SHA-256(pinToken, clientDataHash), 16) and matching against input pinAuth parameter.
    - If pinAuth verification fails, authenticator returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_INVALID error.
    - If authenticator sees 3 consecutive mismatches, it returns CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_BLOCKED indicating that power recycle is needed for further operations. This is done so that malware running on the platform should not be able to block the device without user interaction.
  - Authenticator returns authenticatorMakeCredential response with "uv" bit set to 1.

If platform sends zero length pinAuth, authenticator needs to wait for user touch and then returns either CTAP2_ERR_PIN_NOT_SET if pin is not set or CTAP2_ERR_PIN_INVALID if pin has been set. This is done for the case where multiple authenticators are attached to the platform and the platform wants to enforce clientPin semantics, but the user has to select which authenticator to send the pinToken to.

5.5.8.2. Using pinToken in authenticatorGetAssertion

Following operations are performed to use pinToken in authenticatorGetAssertion API:

- Platform gets pinToken from the authenticator.
- Platform sends authenticatorGetAssertion command with following additional optional parameter:
  - pinProtocol: 0x01.
If platform sends zero length pinAuth, authenticator needs to wait for user touch and then returns either CTAP2_ERR_PIN_NOT_SET if pin is not set or CTAP2_ERR_PIN_INVALID if pin has been set. This is done for the case where multiple authenticators are attached to the platform and the platform wants to enforce clientPin semantics, but the user has to select which authenticator to send the pinToken to.

Following operations are performed without using pinToken in authenticatorGetAssertion API:

- Platform sends authenticatorGetAssertion command without pinAuth optional parameter.
- Authenticator returns authenticatorGetAssertion response with "uv" bit set to 0.

5.5.8.3. Without pinToken in authenticatorGetAssertion

If platform sends zero length pinAuth, authenticator needs to wait for user touch and then returns either CTAP2_ERR_PIN_NOT_SET if pin is not set or CTAP2_ERR_PIN_INVALID if pin has been set. This is done for the case where multiple authenticators are attached to the platform and the platform wants to enforce clientPin semantics, but the user has to select which authenticator to send the pinToken to.
Generate ECDH authenticatorKeyAgreementKey (a, aG). Let aG represents its public key.
Generate random "pinToken" (multiple of 16 bytes) at powerup.

Generate ECDH platformKeyAgreementKey (b, bG). Let bG represents its public key.
Generate sharedSecret = SHA-256((baG).x)

authenticatorClientPIN
pinProtocol = 1, subCommand = 2
keyAgreement = bG
Generate sharedSecret = SHA-256((abG).x), Validate pinAuth, Decrypt newPinEnc and validate it,
Decrypt newPinEnc, Checks newPin minimum length, Store LEFT(SHA-256(newPin),16)

authenticatorClientPIN
pinProtocol = 1, subCommand = 1
retries = retriesCount

authenticatorClientPIN
pinProtocol = 1, subCommand = 3,
keyAgreement = bG, newPinEnc = AES256-CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, newPin),
pinAuth = LEFT(HMAC-SHA-256(sharedSecret, newPinEnc), 16)

authenticatorClientPIN
pinProtocol = 1, subCommand = 4,
keyAgreement = bG, newPinEnc = AES256-CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, newPin),
newPinEnc = AES256-CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, newPin),
pinAuth = LEFT(HMAC-SHA-256(sharedSecret, newPinEnc || pinHashEnc), 16)

authenticatorClientPIN
pinTokenEnc = AES256_CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, pinToken)

authenticatorMakeCredential
RPID = rpId, CLIENT_DATA_HASH = clientDataHash,
pinAuth = LEFT(HMAC-SHA-256(PIN), 16), pinProtocol = 1

authenticatorGetAssertion
RPID = rpId, CLIENT_DATA_HASH = clientDataHash,
pinAuth = LEFT(HMAC-SHA-256(pinToken, clientDataHash), 16), pinProtocol = 1

authenticatorGetAssertion
RPID = rpId, CLIENT_DATA_HASH = clientDataHash

authenticatorGetAssertion
RPID = rpId, CLIENT_DATA_HASH = clientDataHash

Figure 1 Client PIN
5.6. authenticatorReset (0x07)§

This method is used by the client to reset an authenticator back to a factory default state, invalidating all generated credentials. In order to prevent accidental trigger of this mechanism, some form of user approval MAY be performed on the authenticator itself, meaning that the client will have to poll the device until the reset has been performed. The actual user-flow to perform the reset will vary depending on the authenticator and it outside the scope of this specification.

6. Message Encoding§

Many transports (e.g., Bluetooth Smart) are bandwidth-constrained, and serialization formats such as JSON are too heavy-weight for such environments. For this reason, all encoding is done using the concise binary encoding CBOR [RFC7049].

To reduce the complexity of the messages and the resources required to parse and validate them, all messages MUST use the CTAP2 canonical CBOR encoding form as specified below, which differs from the canonicalization suggested CTAP2 canonical CBOR encoding form as specified in Section 3.9 of [RFC7049]. All encoders MUST serialize CBOR in the CTAP2 canonical CBOR encoding form without duplicate map keys. All decoders SHOULD reject CBOR that is not validly encoded in the CTAP2 canonical CBOR encoding form and SHOULD reject messages with duplicate map keys.

The CTAP2 canonical CBOR encoding form uses the following rules:

- Integers must be encoded as small as possible.
  - 0 to 23 and -1 to -24 must be expressed in the same byte as the major type;
  - 24 to 255 and -25 to -256 must be expressed only with an additional uint8_t;
  - 256 to 65535 and -257 to -65536 must be expressed only with an additional uint16_t;
  - 65536 to 4294967295 and -65537 to -4294967296 must be expressed only with an additional uint32_t.
- The representations of any floating-point values are not changed.
- The expression of lengths in major types 2 through 5 must be as short as possible. The rules for these lengths follow the above rule for integers.
- Indefinite-length items must be made into definite-length items.
- The keys in every map must be sorted lowest value to highest. The sorting rules are:
  - If the major types are different, the one with the lower value in numerical order sorts earlier.
  - If two keys have different lengths, the shorter one sorts earlier;
  - If two keys have the same length, the one with the lower value in (byte-wise) lexical order sorts earlier.

Note: These rules are equivalent to a lexicographical comparison of the canonical encoding of keys for major types 0-3 and 7 (integers, strings, and simple values). They differ for major types 4-6 (arrays, maps, and tags), which CTAP2 does not use as keys in maps. These rules should be revisited if CTAP2 does start using the complex major types as keys.

- Tags as defined in Section 2.4 in [RFC7049] MUST NOT be present.

Because some authenticators are memory constrained, the depth of nested CBOR structures used by all message encodings is limited to at most four (4) levels of any combination of CBOR maps and/or CBOR arrays. Authenticators MUST support at least 4 levels of CBOR nesting. Clients, platforms, and servers MUST NOT use more than 4 levels of CBOR nesting.

Likewise, because some authenticators are memory constrained, the maximum message size supported by an authenticator MAY be limited. By default, authenticators MUST support messages of at least 1024 bytes. Authenticators MAY declare a different maximum message size supported using the maxMsgSize
authenticatorGetInfo result parameter. Clients, platforms, and servers MUST NOT send messages larger than 1024 bytes unless the authenticator's maxMsgSize indicates support for the larger message size. Authenticators MAY return the CTAP2_ERR_REQUEST_TOO_LARGE error if size or memory constraints are exceeded.

If map keys are present that an implementation does not understand, they MUST be ignored. Note that this enables additional fields to be used as new features are added without breaking existing implementations.

Messages from the host to authenticator are called "commands" and messages from authenticator to host are called "replies". All values are big endian encoded.

Authenticators SHOULD return the CTAP2_ERR_INVALID_CBOR error if received CBOR does not conform to the requirements above.

### 6.1. Commands

All commands are structured as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Required?</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command Value</td>
<td>1 byte</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>The value of the command to execute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command Parameters</td>
<td>variable</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>CBOR [RFC7049] encoded set of parameters. Some commands have parameters, while others do not (see below)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The assigned values for commands and their descriptions are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Name</th>
<th>Command Value</th>
<th>Has parameters?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorMakeCredential</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorGetAssertion</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorGetInfo</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorClientPIN</td>
<td>0x06</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorReset</td>
<td>0x07</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorGetNextAssertion</td>
<td>0x08</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorVendorFirst</td>
<td>0x40</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorVendorLast</td>
<td>0xBF</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Command codes in the range between `authenticatorVendorFirst` and `authenticatorVendorLast` may be used for vendor-specific implementations. For example, the vendor may choose to put in some testing commands. Note that the FIDO client will never generate these commands. All other command codes are reserved for future use and may not be used.

Command parameters are encoded using a CBOR map (CBOR major type 5). The CBOR map must be encoded using the definite length variant.

Some commands have optional parameters. Therefore, the length of the parameter map for these commands may vary. For example, authenticatorMakeCredential may have 4, 5, 6, or 7 parameters, while authenticatorGetAssertion may have 2, 3, 4, or 5 parameters.

All command parameters are CBOR encoded following the JSON to CBOR conversion procedures as per the CBOR specification [RFC7049]. Specifically, parameters that are represented as DOM objects in the
Authenticator API layers (formally defined in the Web API [WebAuthN]) are converted first to JSON and subsequently to CBOR.

**EXAMPLE 1**

A PublicKeyCredentialRpEntity DOM object defined as follows:

```javascript
var rp = {
    name: "Acme"
};
```

would be CBOR encoded as follows:

```cbor
a1    # map(1)
  64    # text(4)
  6e616d65    # "name"
  64    # text(4)
  416366d5    # "Acme"
```

**EXAMPLE 2**

A PublicKeyCredentialUserEntity DOM object defined as follows:

```javascript
var user = {
    id: Uint8Array.from(window.atob("MIIBkzCCATigAwIBAjCCAZMwggE4oAMCAQIwggGTMII="), c=>c.charCodeAt(0)),
    icon: "https://pics.example.com/00/p/aBjjjpqPb.png",
    name: "johnpsmith@example.com",
    displayName: "John P. Smith"
};
```

would be CBOR encoded as follows:

```cbor
a4    # map(4)
  62    # text(2)
  6964    # "id"
  58 20    # bytes(32)
  3082019330820138a003020102    # userid
  3082019330820138a003020102    # ...
  58 20    # bytes(32)
  3082019330820138a003020102    # ...
  64    # text(4)
  69636f6e    # "icon"
  782b    # text(43)
  68747470733a2f2f706963732e657861    # "https://pics.example.com/00/p/aBjjjpqPb.png"
  6d706c652e636f6669646174652e706f627475636c75696e67646973706c61794e616d65    # ...
  6a6a6a707150622e706e67    # ...
  64    # text(4)
  6e616d65    # "name"
  76    # text(22)
  6a6f686e70736f6e69646174652e706f627475636c75696e67646973706c61794e616d65    # "johnpsmith@example.com"
  6c652e636f6669646174652e706f627475636c75696e67646973706c61794e616d65    # ...
  6b    # text(11)
  646973706c61794e616d65    # "displayName"
  6d    # text(13)
  4a6f686e20502e20536d697468    # "John P. Smith"
```
For each command that contains parameters, the parameter map keys and value types are specified below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Parameter Name</th>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Value type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorMakeCredential</td>
<td>clientDataHash</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rp</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>CBOR definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>user</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>CBOR definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>authParams</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>CBOR definite length array (CBOR major type 4) of CBOR definite length maps (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>excludeList</td>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>CBOR definite length array (CBOR major type 4) of CBOR definite length maps (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>extensions</td>
<td>0x06</td>
<td>CBOR definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>options</td>
<td>0x07</td>
<td>CBOR definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXAMPLE 3**

A DOM object that is a sequence of PublicKeyCredentialParameters defined as follows:

```javascript
var publicKeyCredParams = [
  {
    type: "public-key",
    alg: -7 // "ES256" as registered in the IANA COSE Algorithms registry
  },
  {
    type: "public-key",
    alg: -257 // "RS256" as registered by WebAuthn
  }
];
```

would be CBOR encoded as:

```
82 a2 63 616c67 26 64 74797065 6a 7075626c69632d6b6579
82 a2 63 616c67 26 64 74797065 6a 7075626c69632d6b6579
```

For each command that contains parameters, the parameter map keys and value types are specified below:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>pinAuth</strong></th>
<th>0x08</th>
<th>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>pinProtocol</strong></td>
<td>0x09</td>
<td>PIN protocol version chosen by the client. For this version of the spec, this SHALL be the number 1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**authenticatorGetAssertion**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>rpId</strong></th>
<th>0x01</th>
<th>UTF-8 encoded text string (CBOR major type 3).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>clientDataHash</strong></th>
<th>0x02</th>
<th>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>allowList</strong></th>
<th>0x03</th>
<th>CBOR definite length array (CBOR major type 4) of CBOR definite length maps (CBOR major type 5).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>extensions</strong></th>
<th>0x04</th>
<th>CBOR definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>options</strong></th>
<th>0x05</th>
<th>CBOR definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>pinAuth</strong></th>
<th>0x06</th>
<th>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>pinProtocol</strong></th>
<th>0x07</th>
<th>PIN protocol version chosen by the client. For this version of the spec, this SHALL be the number 1.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**authenticatorClientPIN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>pinProtocol</strong></th>
<th>0x01</th>
<th>Unsigned Integer. (CBOR major type 0)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>subCommand</strong></th>
<th>0x02</th>
<th>Unsigned Integer. (CBOR major type 0)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>keyAgreement</strong></th>
<th>0x03</th>
<th>COSE Key</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>pinAuth</strong></th>
<th>0x04</th>
<th>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>newPinEnc</strong></th>
<th>0x05</th>
<th>byte string (CBOR major type 2). It is UTF-8 representation of encrypted input PIN value.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>pinHashEnc</strong></th>
<th>0x06</th>
<th>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Example 4

The following is a complete encoding example of the `authenticatorMakeCredential` command (using same account and crypto parameters as above) and the corresponding `authenticatorMakeCredential_Response` response:

```
01 a5 01
58 20 687134968222ec17202e42505f8ed2b1 25db9e602645f141' 6ae22f16bb05b88c25db9e602645f141 #
02 a2 62 6964 6b #
```
authenticatorMakeCredential_Response response:

00  # status = success
a3  # map(3)
01  # unsigned(1)
66  # text(6)
7061636b6564  # "packed"
02  # unsigned(2)
58 9a  # bytes(154)
   c30c5c0b4a62c73f54b4c2f842aaa232  # authData
EXAMPLE 5
The following is a complete encoding example of the authenticatorGetAssertion command and the...
The following is a complete encoding example of the authenticatorGetAssertion command and the corresponding authenticatorGetAssertion_Response response:

### authenticatorGetAssertion command:
```
02 # authenticatorGetAssertion command
a4 # map(4)
 01 # unsigned(1)
 6b # text(11)
    6578616d706c652e63666f72656374 # "example.com"
 02 # unsigned(2)
 58 20 # bytes(32)
    687134968222ec17202e42505f8ed2b1 # clientDataHash
    6ae22f16bb05b88c25db9e602645f141 # ...
 03 # unsigned(3)
 82 # array(2)
a2 # map(2)
 62 # text(2)
   6964 # "id"
 58 40 # bytes(64)
    f22006de4f905af68a43942f02 # credential ID
    4f2a5ece603d9c6d4b3df8be08 # ...
    ed01fc442646d034858ac75bed # ...
    3fd580bf9808d94fcee82b9b2 # ...
    ef6677af0adcc35b52ea6b9e # ...
 64 # text(4)
   74797065 # "type"
 6a # text(10)
   7075626c69632d6b6579 # "public-key"
a2 # map(2)
 62 # text(2)
   6964 # "id"
 58 32 # bytes(50)
   030303030303030303030303030303030303 # credential ID
   030303030303030303030303030303030303 # ...
   030303030303030303030303030303030303 # ...
   030303030303030303030303030303030303 # ...
 64 # text(4)
   74797065 # "type"
 6a # text(10)
   7075626c69632d6b6579 # "public-key"
05 # unsigned(5)
a1 # map(1)
 62 # text(2)
   7576 # "uv"
f5 # true
```

### authenticatorGetAssertion_Response response:
```
00 # status = success
a5 # map(5)
 01 # unsigned(1) - Credential
   # map(2)
   6964 # "id"
 58 40 # bytes(64)
   f22006de4f905af68a43942f02 # credential ID
   4f2a5ece603d9c6d4b3df8be08 # ...
   ed01fc442646d034858ac75bed # ...
   3fd580bf9808d94fcee82b9b2 # ...
   ef6677af0adcc35b52ea6b9e # ...
 64 # text(4)
   74797065 # "type"
 6a # text(10)
   7075626c69632d6b6579 # "public-key"
```
All responses are structured as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Required?</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>1 byte</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>The status of the response. 0x00 means success; all other values are errors. See the table in the next section for valid values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response Data</td>
<td>variable</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>CBOR encoded set of values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Response data is encoded using a CBOR map (CBOR major type 5). The CBOR map must be encoded using the definite length variant.

For each response message, the map keys and value types are specified below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Response Message</th>
<th>Member Name</th>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Value type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response Type</td>
<td>Field Name</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorMakeCredential_Response</td>
<td>fmt</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>text string (CBOR major type 3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>authData</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>attStmt</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorGetAssertion_Response</td>
<td>credential</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>authData</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>publicKeyCredentialUserEntity</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>numberOfCredentials</td>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>unsigned integer(CBOR major type 0).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorGetNextAssertion_Response</td>
<td>credential</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>authData</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>publicKeyCredentialUserEntity</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>definite length map (CBOR major type 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorGetInfo_Response</td>
<td>versions</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>definite length array (CBOR major type 4) of UTF-8 encoded strings (CBOR major type 3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>extensions</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>definite length array (CBOR major type 4) of UTF-8 encoded strings (CBOR major type 3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aaguid</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>byte string (CBOR major type 2). 16 bytes in length and encoded the same as MakeCredential AuthenticatorData, as specified in [WebAuthN].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Definite length map (CBOR major type 5) of key-value pairs where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>options</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>keys are UTF8 strings (CBOR major type 3) and values are booleans (CBOR simple value 21).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxMsgSize</td>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>unsigned integer (CBOR major type 0). This is the maximum message size supported by the authenticator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinProtocols</td>
<td>0x06</td>
<td>array of unsigned integers (CBOR major type). This is the list of pinProtocols supported by the authenticator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticatorClientPIN_Response</td>
<td>keyAgreement 0x01</td>
<td>Authenticator public key in COSE_Key format. The COSE_Key-encoded public key MUST contain the optional &quot;alg&quot; parameter and MUST NOT contain any other optional parameters. The &quot;alg&quot; parameter MUST contain a COSEAlgorithmIdentifier value.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinToken</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>byte string (CBOR major type 2).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retries</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>Unsigned integer (CBOR major type 0). This is number of retries left before lockout.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.3. Status codes

The error response values range from 0x01 - 0xff. This range is split based on error type.

Error response values in the range between \texttt{CTAP2_OK} and \texttt{CTAP2_ERR_SPEC_LAST} are reserved for spec purposes.

Error response values in the range between \texttt{CTAP2_ERR_VENDOR_FIRST} and \texttt{CTAP2_ERR_VENDOR_LAST} may be used for vendor-specific implementations. All other response values are reserved for future use and may not be used. These vendor specific error codes are not interoperable and the platform should treat these errors as any other unknown error codes.

Error response values in the range between \texttt{CTAP2_ERR_EXTENSION_FIRST} and \texttt{CTAP2_ERR_EXTENSION_LAST} may be used for extension-specific implementations. These errors need to be interoperable for vendors who decide to implement such optional extension.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>CTAP1_ERR_SUCCESS</td>
<td>Indicates successful response.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>CTAP1_ERR_INVALID_COMMAND</td>
<td>The command is not a valid CTAP command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>CTAP1_ERR_INVALID_PARAMETER</td>
<td>The command included an invalid parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>CTAP1_ERR_INVALID_LENGTH</td>
<td>Invalid message or item length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>CTAP1_ERR_INVALID_SEQ</td>
<td>Invalid message sequencing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>CTAP1_ERR_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>Message timed out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x06</td>
<td>CTAP1_ERR_CHANNEL_BUSY</td>
<td>Channel busy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0A</td>
<td>CTAP1_ERR_LOCK_REQUIRED</td>
<td>Command requires channel lock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0B</td>
<td>CTAP1_ERR_INVALID_CHANNEL</td>
<td>Command not allowed on this cid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x11</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_CBOR_UNEXPECTED_TYPE</td>
<td>Invalid/unexpected CBOR error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x12</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_INVALID_CBOR</td>
<td>Error when parsing CBOR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x14</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_MISSING_PARAMETER</td>
<td>Missing non-optional parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x15</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_LIMIT_EXCEEDED</td>
<td>Limit for number of items exceeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x16</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_UNSUPPORTED_EXTENSION</td>
<td>Unsupported extension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x19</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_CREDENTIAL_EXCLUDED</td>
<td>Valid credential found in the exclude list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x21</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_PROCESSING</td>
<td>Processing (Lengthy operation is in progress).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x22</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_INVALID_CREDENTIAL</td>
<td>Credential not valid for the authenticator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x23</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_USER_ACTION_PENDING</td>
<td>Authentication is waiting for user interaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x24</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_OPERATION_PENDING</td>
<td>Processing, lengthy operation is in progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x25</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_NO_OPERATIONS</td>
<td>No request is pending.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x26</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_UNSUPPORTED_ALGORITHM</td>
<td>Authenticator does not support requested algorithm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x27</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_OPERATION_DENIED</td>
<td>Not authorized for requested operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x28</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_KEY_STORE_FULL</td>
<td>Internal key storage is full.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x29</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_NOT_BUSY</td>
<td>Authenticator cannot cancel as it is not busy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2A</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_NO_OPERATION_PENDING</td>
<td>No outstanding operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2B</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_UNSUPPORTED_OPTION</td>
<td>Unsupported option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2C</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_INVALID_OPTION</td>
<td>Not a valid option for current operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2D</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_KEEPALIVE_CANCEL</td>
<td>Pending keep alive was cancelled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2E</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_NO_CREDENTIALS</td>
<td>No valid credentials provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x2F</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_USER_ACTION_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>Timeout waiting for user interaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x30</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_NOT_ALLOWED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Continuation command, such as, authenticatorGetNextAssertion not allowed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x31</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_PIN_INVALID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PIN Invalid.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x32</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_PIN_BLOCKED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PIN Blocked.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x33</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_INVALID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PIN authentication, pinAuth, verification failed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x34</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_PIN_AUTH_BLOCKED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PIN authentication, pinAuth, blocked. Requires power recycle to reset.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x35</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_PIN_NOT_SET</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No PIN has been set.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x36</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_PIN_REQUIRED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PIN is required for the selected operation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x37</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_PIN_POLICY_VIOLATION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PIN policy violation. Currently only enforces minimum length.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x38</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_PIN_TOKEN_EXPIRED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pinToken expired on authenticator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x39</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_REQUEST_TOO_LARGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Authenticator cannot handle this request due to memory constraints.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x3A</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_ACTION_TIMEOUT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The current operation has timed out.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x3B</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_UP_REQUIRED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User presence is required for the requested operation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x7F</td>
<td>CTAP1_ERR_OTHER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other unspecified error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xDF</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_SPEC_LAST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CTAP 2 spec last error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xE0</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_EXTENSION_FIRST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extension specific error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xEF</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_EXTENSION_LAST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extension specific error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xF0</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_VENDOR_FIRST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vendor specific error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xFF</td>
<td>CTAP2_ERR_VENDOR_LAST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vendor specific error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Interoperating with CTAP1/U2F authenticators

This section defines how a platform maps CTAP2 requests to CTAP1/U2F requests and CTAP1/U2F responses to CTAP2 responses in order to support CTAP1/U2F authenticators via CTAP2. CTAP2 requests can be mapped to CTAP1/U2F requests provided the CTAP2 request does not have parameters that only CTAP2 authenticators can fulfill. The processes for RPs to use to verify CTAP1/U2F based authenticatorMakeCredential and authenticatorGetAssertion responses are also defined below. Platform may choose to skip this feature and work only with CTAP devices.

7.1. Framing of U2F commands

The U2F protocol is based on a request-response mechanism, where a requester sends a request message to a U2F device, which always results in a response message being sent back from the U2F device to the requester.

The request message has to be "framed" to send to the lower layer. Taking the signature request as an example, the "framing" is a way for the FIDO client to tell the lower transport layer that it is sending a signature request and then send the raw message contents. The framing also specifies how the transport will carry back the response raw message and any meta-information such as an error code if the command failed.
In this current version of U2F, the framing is defined based on the ISO7816-4:2005 extended APDU format. This is very appropriate for the USB transport since devices are typically built around secure elements which understand this format already. This same argument may apply for futures such as Bluetooth based devices. For other futures based on other transports, such as a built-in u2f token on a mobile device TEE, this framing may not be appropriate, and a different framing may need to be defined.

7.1.1. U2F Request Message Framing ### (#u2f-request-message-framing)

The raw request message is framed as a command APDU:

```
CLA INS P1 P2 LC1 LC2 LC3
```

Where:

CLA: Reserved to be used by the underlying transport protocol (if applicable). The host application shall set this byte to zero.

INS: U2F command code, defined in the following sections.

P1, P2: Parameter 1 and 2, defined by each command.

LC1-LC3: Length of the request data, big-endian coded, i.e. LC1 being MSB and LC3 LSB

7.1.2. U2F Response Message Framing ### (#u2f-response-message-framing)

The raw response data is framed as a response APDU:

```
SW1 SW2
```

Where:

SW1, SW2: Status word bytes 1 and 2, forming a 16-bit status word, defined below. SW1 is MSB and SW2 LSB.

Status Codes

The following ISO7816-4 defined status words have a special meaning in U2F:

**SW_NO_ERROR**: The command completed successfully without error.

**SW_CONDITIONS_NOT_SATISFIED**: The request was rejected due to test-of-user-presence being required.

**SW_WRONG_DATA**: The request was rejected due to an invalid key handle.

Each implementation may define any other vendor-specific status codes, providing additional information about an error condition. Only the error codes listed above will be handled by U2F FIDO clients, whereas others will be seen as general errors and logging of these is optional.

7.2. Using the CTAP2 authenticatorMakeCredential Command with CTAP1/U2F authenticators

Platform follows the following procedure (Fig: Mapping: WebAuthn authenticatorMakeCredential to and from CTAP1/U2F Registration Messages):

1. **Platform tries to get information about the authenticator by sending authenticatorGetInfo command as specified in CTAP2 protocol overview.**
   - CTAP1/U2F authenticator returns a command error or improperly formatted CBOR response. For any failure, platform may fall back to CTAP1/U2F protocol.

2. **Map CTAP2 authenticatorMakeCredential request to U2F_REGISTER request.**
Platform verifies that CTAP2 request does not have any parameters that CTAP1/U2F authenticators cannot fulfill.

- All of the below conditions must be true for the platform to proceed to next step. If any of the below conditions is not true, platform errors out with CTAP2_ERR_UNSUPPORTED_OPTION.
  - pubKeyCredParams must use the ES256 algorithm (-7).
  - Options must not include "rk" set to true.
  - Options must not include "uv" set to true.
- If excludeList is not empty:
  - If the excludeList is not empty, the platform must send signing request with check-only control byte to the CTAP1/U2F authenticator using each of the credential ids (key handles) in the excludeList. If any of them does not result in an error, that means that this is a known device. Afterwards, the platform must still send a dummy registration request (with a dummy appid and invalid challenge) to CTAP1/U2F authenticators that it believes are excluded. This makes it so the user still needs to touch the CTAP1/U2F authenticator before the RP gets told that the token is already registered.

- Use clientDataHash parameter of CTAP2 request as CTAP1/U2F challenge parameter (32 bytes).
- Let rpIdHash be a byte array of size 32 initialized with SHA-256 hash of rp.id parameter as CTAP1/U2F application parameter (32 bytes).

3. Send the U2F_REGISTER request to the authenticator as specified in [U2FRawMsgs] spec.

4. Map the U2F registration response message (see: [FIDO U2F Raw Message Formats v1.0 §registration-response-message-success]) to a CTAP2 authenticatorMakeCredential response message:
   - Generate authenticatorData from the U2F registration response message [FIDO U2F Raw Message Formats v1.0 §registration-response-message-success] received from the authenticator:
     - Initialize attestedCredData:
       - Let credentialIdLength be a 2-byte unsigned big-endian integer representing length of the Credential ID initialized with CTAP1/U2F response key handle length.
       - Let credentialId be a credentialIdLength byte array initialized with CTAP1/U2F response key handle bytes.
       - Let x9encodedUserPublicKey be the user public key returned in the U2F registration response message [U2FRawMsgs]. Let coseEncodedCredentialPublicKey be the result of converting x9encodedUserPublicKey's value from ANS X9.62 / Sec-1 v2 uncompressed curve point representation [SEC1V2] to COSE_Key representation [RFC8152] Section 7.
       - Let attestedCredData be a byte array with following structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Length (in bytes)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>The AAGUID of the authenticator.</td>
<td>Initialized with all zeros.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Byte length L of Credential ID</td>
<td>Initialized with credentialIdLength bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credentialIdLength</td>
<td>Credential ID.</td>
<td>Initialized with credentialId bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>The credential public key.</td>
<td>Initialized with coseEncodedCredentialPublicKey bytes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

     - Initialize authenticatorData:
Let flags be a byte whose zeroth bit (bit 0, UP) is set, and whose sixth bit (bit 6, AT) is set, and all other bits are zero (bit zero is the least significant bit). See also Authenticator Data section of [WebAuthN].

Let signCount be a 4-byte unsigned integer initialized to zero.

Let authenticatorData be a byte array with the following structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Length (in bytes)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>SHA-256 hash of the rp.id.</td>
<td>Initialized with rpIdHash bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Flags</td>
<td>Initialized with flags' value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Signature counter (signCount).</td>
<td>Initialized with signCount bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable Length</td>
<td>Attested credential data</td>
<td>Initialized with attestedCredData's value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let attestationStatement be a CBOR map (see "attStmtTemplate" in Generating an Attestation Object [WebAuthN]) with the following keys, whose values are as follows:

- Set "x5c" as an array of the one attestation cert extracted from CTAP1/U2F response.
- Set "sig" to be the "signature" bytes from the U2F registration response message [U2FRawMsgs].

Let attestationObject be a CBOR map (see "attObj" in Attestation object [WebAuthN]) with the following keys, whose values are as follows:

- Set "authData" to authenticatorData.
- Set "fmt" to "fido-u2f".
- Set "attStmt" to attestationStatement.

5. Return attestationObject to the caller.

**EXAMPLE 6**
Sample CTAP2 authenticatorMakeCredential Request (CBOR):

```
{1: h'687134968222EC17202E42505F8ED2B16AE22F16BB05B88C25DB9E602645F141',
  2: {"id": "example.com",
      "name": "example.com"},
  3: {"id": "1098237235409872",
      "name": "johnpsmith@example.com",
      "icon": "https://pics.example.com/00/p/aBjjjpqPb.png",
      "displayName": "John P. Smith"},
  4: [{"type": "public-key", "alg": -7},
    {"type": "public-key", "alg": -257}]
```

CTAP1/U2F Request from above CTAP2 authenticatorMakeCredential request

```
687134968222EC17202E42505F8ED2B16AE22F16BB05B88C25DB9E602645F141 # clientDataHash
1194228DA8FDBDEEF2D61B786595CFD70A50D70C6407BCF013DE96D4EFB17DE # rpIdHash
```

Sample CTAP1/U2F Response from the device

```
05 # Reserved Byte (1 Byte )
04E87625896EE4E46DC032766E8087962F36DF90FE8B567F3763015B1990A60E # User Public Key (65 Bytes)
```
Authenticator Data from CTAP1/U2F Response

```
1194228DA8FD8DEEDF261DB76595CFD70A50070C4078CF013DE96D4EFB17DE # rpIdHash
41
00000000
0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000 # flags
0040
0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000 # AAGUID
0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000 # Key Handle Length (1 Byte)
3EBD09BF77EC509755EE9C2635EFAAAC7B2B9C5CFC1736C3717DA485348C86B # Key Handle (Key Handle Length Bytes)
54D7FF945F50B5CC4E78055B0D396B64F78DA2C5F96200CCD415CD08FE420038 # ...
388202A30B2012A0030B2012A0406CCB2230B0D6092A864886F7F0D01010B # X.509 Cert (Variable Length Cert)
```

Mapped CTAP2 authenticatorMakeCredential response(CBOR)

```
{"fmt": "fido-u2f",
"authData": "h'1194228DA8FD8DEEDF261DB76595CFD70A50070C4078CF013DE96D4EFB17DE"
41
00000000
0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000 # rpIdHash
0040
0000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000 # Key Handle Length (1 Byte)
3EBD09BF77EC509755EE9C2635EFAAAC7B2B9C5CFC1736C3717DA485348C86B # Key Handle (Key Handle Length Bytes)
54D7FF945F50B5CC4E78055B0D396B64F78DA2C5F96200CCD415CD08FE420038 # ...
AS010203262001215820E8762596EE4EE460C3276E8807962F36D9F9DE8B56 # Public Key
7F3763015B199094E014225820272DE61266418BDA1950581BEBC5C8C10A710C # ...
B14C2F8C97045F4612FB20C91 # ...
```

7.3. Using the CTAP2 authenticatorGetAssertion Command with CTAP1/U2F authenticators

Platform follows the following procedure (Fig: Mapping: WebAuthn authenticatorGetAssertion to and from CTAP1/U2F Authentication Messages):

1. Platform tries to get information about the authenticator by sending authenticatorGetInfo command as
CTAP2 protocol overview.

- CTAP1/U2F authenticator returns a command error or improperly formatted CBOR response. For any failure, platform may fall back to CTAP1/U2F protocol.

2. Map CTAP2 authenticatorGetAssertion request to U2F_AUTHENTICATE request:

- Platform verifies that CTAP2 request does not have any parameters that CTAP1/U2F authenticators cannot fulfill:
  - All of the below conditions must be true for the platform to proceed to next step. If any of the below conditions is not true, platform errors out with CTAP2_ERR_UNSUPPORTED_OPTION.
    - Options must not include "uv" set to true.
    - allowList must have at least one credential.
  - If allowList has more than one credential, platform has to loop over the list and send individual different U2F_AUTHENTICATE commands to the authenticator. For each credential in credential list, map CTAP2 authenticatorGetAssertion request to U2F_AUTHENTICATE as below:
    - Let controlByte be a byte initialized as follows:
      - For USB, set it to 0x07 (check-only). This should prevent call getting blocked on waiting for user input. If response returns success, then call again setting the enforce-user-presence-and-sign.
      - For NFC, set it to 0x03 (enforce-user-presence-and-sign). The tap has already provided the presence and won't block.
    - Use clientDataHash parameter of CTAP2 request as CTAP1/U2F challenge parameter (32 bytes).
    - Let rpIdHash be a byte array of size 32 initialized with SHA-256 hash of rp.id parameter as CTAP1/U2F application parameter (32 bytes).
    - Let credentialId is the byte array initialized with the id for this PublicKeyCredentialDescriptor.
    - Let keyHandleLength be a byte initialized with length of credentialId byte array.
    - Let u2fAuthenticateRequest be a byte array with the following structure:
      | Length (in bytes) | Description            | Value                                      |
      |-------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
      | 32                | Challenge parameter    | Initialized with clientDataHash parameter bytes. |
      | 32                | Application parameter  | Initialized with rpIdHash bytes.           |
      | 1                 | Key handle length      | Initialized with keyHandleLength's value.  |
      |                   | Key handle             | Initialized with credentialId bytes.       |

- Generate authenticatorData from the U2F authentication response message received from the authenticator:
  - Let flags be a byte whose zeroth bit (bit 0, UP) is set to 1 if CTAP1/U2F response user presence byte is set to 1, and all other bits are zero (bit zero is the least significant bit). See also
Authenticator Data section of [WebAuthN].

- Let `signCount` be a 4-byte unsigned integer initialized with CTAP1/U2F response counter field.
- Let `authenticatorData` is a byte array of following structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Length (in bytes)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>SHA-256 hash of the <code>rp.id</code></td>
<td>Initialized with <code>rpIdHash</code> bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Flags</td>
<td>Initialized with <code>flags</code>' value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Signature counter</td>
<td>Initialized with <code>signCount</code> bytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(signCount)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Let `authenticatorGetAssertionResponse` be a CBOR map with the following keys whose values are as follows:
  - Set 0x01 with the credential from allowList that whose response succeeded.
  - Set 0x02 with `authenticatorData` bytes.
  - Set 0x03 with signature field from CTAP1/U2F authentication response message.
Example 7

Sample CTAP2 authenticatorGetAssertion Request (CBOR):

```
{1: "example.com",
  2: h'687134968222EC17202E42505F8ED2B16AE22F16BB05B88C25DB9E602645F141',
  3: {"type": "public-key",
     "id": h'3EBD89BF77EC509755EE9C2635EFAAAC7B2B9C5CEF1736C3717DA48534C8C6B6 54D7FF945F50B5CC4E78055BD0396B64F78DA2C5F96200CCD415CD08FE420038'},
  5: {"up": true}}
```

CTAP1/U2F Request from above CTAP2 authenticatorGetAssertion request

```
687134968222EC17202E42505F8ED2B16AE22F16BB05B88C25DB9E602645F141  # clientDataHash
1194228DA8FDBDEEFD261BD7B6595CFD70A50D70C6407BCF013DE96D4EFB17DE 40  # Key Handle Length (1 Byte)
3EBD89BF77EC509755EE9C2635EFAAAC7B2B9C5CEF1736C3717DA48534C8C6B6  # Key Handle (Key Handle Length Bytes)
54D7FF945F50B5CC4E78055BD0396B64F78DA2C5F96200CCD415CD08FE420038  # ...
```

Sample CTAP1/U2F Response from the device

```
01  # User Presence (1 Byte)
0000003B  # Sign Count (4 Bytes)
304402207BDE0A52AC1F4CBB27E003A370CD66A4C7118DD22D5447835F45B99C  # Signature (variable length)
68423FF702203C517B47877F85782DE10086A78301E7DF4E3639E771F56AFA3 5AAD5373858E  # ...
```

Authenticator Data from CTAP1/U2F Response

```
1194228DA8FDBDEEFD261BD7B6595CFD70A50D70C6407BCF013DE96D4EFB17DE 01  # rpIdHash
0000003B  # User Presence (1 Byte)
```

Mapped CTAP2 authenticatorGetAssertion response (CBOR)

```
{1: {"type": "public-key",
     "id": h'3EBD89BF77EC509755EE9C2635EFAAAC7B2B9C5CEF1736C3717DA48534C8C6B6 54D7FF945F50B5CC4E78055BD0396B64F78DA2C5F96200CCD415CD08FE420038'},
  2: h'1194228DA8FDBDEEFD261BD7B6595CFD70A50D70C6407BCF013DE96D4EFB17DE 010000003B',
  3: h'304402207BDE0A52AC1F4CBB27E003A370CD66A4C7118DD22D5447835F45B99C 68423FF702203C517B47877F85782DE10086A78301E7DF4E3639E771F56AFA3 5AAD5373858E'}
```
8. Transport-specific Bindings

8.1. USB Human Interface Device (USB HID)

8.1.1. Design rationale

CTAP messages are framed for USB transport using the HID (Human Interface Device) protocol. We henceforth refer to the protocol as CTAPHID. The CTAPHID protocol is designed with the following design objectives in mind:

- Driver-less installation on all major host platforms
- Multi-application support with concurrent application access without the need for serialization and centralized dispatching.
- Fixed latency response and low protocol overhead
- Scalable method for CTAPHID device discovery
Since HID data is sent as interrupt packets and multiple applications may access the HID stack at once, a non-trivial level of complexity has to be added to handle this.

8.1.2. Protocol structure and data framing

The CTAP protocol is designed to be concurrent and state-less in such a way that each performed function is not dependent on previous actions. However, there has to be some form of "atomicity" that varies between the characteristics of the underlying transport protocol, which for the CTAPHID protocol introduces the following terminology:

- Transaction
- Message
- Packet

A transaction is the highest level of aggregated functionality, which in turn consists of a request, followed by a response message. Once a request has been initiated, the transaction has to be entirely completed before a second transaction can take place and a response is never sent without a previous request. Transactions exist only at the highest CTAP protocol layer.

Request and response messages are in turn divided into individual fragments, known as packets. The packet is the smallest form of protocol data unit, which in the case of CTAPHID are mapped into HID reports.

8.1.3. Concurrency and channels

Additional logic and overhead is required to allow a CTAPHID device to deal with multiple "clients", i.e. multiple applications accessing the single resource through the HID stack. Each client communicates with a CTAPHID device through a logical channel, where each application uses a unique 32-bit channel identifier for routing and arbitration purposes.

A channel identifier is allocated by the FIDO authenticator to ensure its system-wide uniqueness. The actual algorithm for generation of channel identifiers is vendor specific and not defined by this specification.

Channel ID 0 is reserved and 0xffffffff is reserved for broadcast commands, i.e. at the time of channel allocation.

8.1.4. Message and packet structure

Packets are one of two types, initialization packets and continuation packets. As the name suggests, the first packet sent in a message is an initialization packet, which also becomes the start of a transaction. If the entire message does not fit into one packet (including the CTAPHID protocol overhead), one or more continuation packets have to be sent in strict ascending order to complete the message transfer.

A message sent from a host to a device is known as a request and a message sent from a device back to the host is known as a response. A request always triggers a response and response messages are never sent ad-hoc, i.e. without a prior request message. However, a keep-alive message can be sent between a request and a response message.

The request and response messages have an identical structure. A transaction is started with the initialization packet of the request message and ends with the last packet of the response message.

Packets are always fixed size (defined by the endpoint and HID report descriptors) and although all bytes may not be needed in a particular packet, the full size always has to be sent. Unused bytes SHOULD be set to zero.

An initialization packet is defined as
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offset</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>CID</td>
<td>Channel identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>CMD</td>
<td>Command identifier (bit 7 always set)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>BCNTH</td>
<td>High part of payload length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>BCNTL</td>
<td>Low part of payload length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>(s - 7)</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>Payload data (s is equal to the fixed packet size)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The command byte has always the highest bit set to distinguish it from a continuation packet, which is described below.

A continuation packet is defined as

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offset</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>CID</td>
<td>Channel identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>SEQ</td>
<td>Packet sequence 0x00..0x7f (bit 7 always cleared)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(s - 5)</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>Payload data (s is equal to the fixed packet size)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With this approach, a message with a payload less or equal to (s - 7) may be sent as one packet. A larger message is then divided into one or more continuation packets, starting with sequence number 0, which then increments by one to a maximum of 127.

With a packet size of 64 bytes (max for full-speed devices), this means that the maximum message payload length is 64 - 7 + 128 * (64 - 5) = 7609 bytes.

8.1.5. Arbitration

In order to handle multiple channels and clients concurrency, the CTAPHID protocol has to maintain certain internal states, block conflicting requests and maintain protocol integrity. The protocol relies on each client application (channel) behaves politely, i.e. does not actively act to destroy for other channels. With this said, a malign or malfunctioning application can cause issues for other channels. Expected errors and potentially stalling applications should however, be handled properly.

8.1.5.1. Transaction atomicity, idle and busy states

A transaction always consists of three stages:

1. A message is sent from the host to the device
2. The device processes the message
3. A response is sent back from the device to the host

The protocol is built on the assumption that a plurality of concurrent applications may try ad-hoc to perform transactions at any time, with each transaction being atomic, i.e. it cannot be interrupted by another application once started.

The application channel that manages to get through the first initialization packet when the device is in idle state will keep the device locked for other channels until the last packet of the response message has been received. The device then returns to idle state, ready to perform another transaction for the same or a different channel. Between two transactions, no state is maintained in the device and a host application must assume that any other process may execute other transactions at any time.
If an application tries to access the device from a different channel while the device is busy with a transaction, that request will immediately fail with a busy-error message sent to the requesting channel.

8.1.5.2. Transaction timeout

A transaction has to be completed within a specified period of time to prevent a stalling application to cause the device to be completely locked out for access by other applications. If for example an application sends an initialization packet that signals that continuation packets will follow and that application crashes, the device will back out that pending channel request and return to an idle state.

8.1.5.3. Transaction abort and re-synchronization

If an application for any reason "gets lost", gets an unexpected response or error, it may at any time issue an abort-and-resynchronize command. If the device detects an INIT command during a transaction that has the same channel id as the active transaction, the transaction is aborted (if possible) and all buffered data flushed (if any). The device then returns to idle state to become ready for a new transaction.

8.1.5.4. Packet sequencing

The device keeps track of packets arriving in correct and ascending order and that no expected packets are missing. The device will continue to assemble a message until all parts of it has been received or that the transaction times out. Spurious continuation packets appearing without a prior initialization packet will be ignored.

8.1.6. Channel locking

In order to deal with aggregated transactions that may not be interrupted, such as tunneling of vendor-specific commands, a channel lock command may be implemented. By sending a channel lock command, the device prevents other channels from communicating with the device until the channel lock has timed out or been explicitly unlocked by the application.

This feature is optional and has not to be considered by general CTAP HID applications.

8.1.7. Protocol version and compatibility

The CTAPHID protocol is designed to be extensible yet maintain backwards compatibility, to the extent it is applicable. This means that a CTAPHID host SHALL support any version of a device with the command set available in that particular version.

8.1.8. HID device implementation

This description assumes knowledge of the USB and HID specifications and is intended to provide the basics for implementing a CTAPHID device. There are several ways to implement USB devices and reviewing these different methods is beyond the scope of this document. This specification targets the interface part, where a device is regarded as either a single or multiple interface (composite) device.

The description further assumes (but is not limited to) a full-speed USB device (12 Mbit/s). Although not excluded per se, USB low-speed devices are not practical to use given the 8-byte report size limitation together with the protocol overhead.
The device implements two endpoints (except the control endpoint 0), one for IN and one for OUT transfers. The packet size is vendor defined, but the reference implementation assumes a full-speed device with two 64-byte endpoints.

### Interface Descriptor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bNumEndpoints</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>One IN and one OUT endpoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blInterfaceClass</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>HID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blInterfaceSubClass</td>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>No interface subclass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blInterfaceProtocol</td>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>No interface protocol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Endpoint 1 descriptor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bmAttributes</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>Interrupt transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bEndpointAdresss</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>1, OUT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bMaxPacketSize</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>64-byte packet max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bInterval</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Poll every 5 millisecond</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Endpoint 2 descriptor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bmAttributes</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>Interrupt transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bEndpointAdresss</td>
<td>0x81</td>
<td>1, IN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bMaxPacketSize</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>64-byte packet max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bInterval</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Poll every 5 millisecond</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The actual endpoint order, intervals, endpoint numbers and endpoint packet size may be defined freely by the vendor and the host application is responsible for querying these values and handle these accordingly. For the sake of clarity, the values listed above are used in the following examples.

### 8.1.8.2. HID report descriptor and device discovery

A HID report descriptor is required for all HID devices, even though the reports and their interpretation (scope, range, etc.) makes very little sense from an operating system perspective. The CTAPHID just provides two "raw" reports, which basically map directly to the IN and OUT endpoints. However, the HID report descriptor has an important purpose in CTAPHID, as it is used for device discovery.

For the sake of clarity, a bit of high-level C-style abstraction is provided
A unique Usage Page is defined (0xF1D0) for the FIDO alliance and under this realm, a CTAPHID Usage is defined as well (0x01). During CTAPHID device discovery, all HID devices present in the system are examined and devices that match this usage pages and usage are then considered to be CTAPHID devices.

The length values specified by the HID_INPUT_REPORT_BYTES and the HID_OUTPUT_REPORT_BYTES should typically match the respective endpoint sizes defined in the endpoint descriptors.

8.1.9. CTAPHID commands

The CTAPHID protocol implements the following commands.

8.1.9.1. Mandatory commands

The following list describes the minimum set of commands required by a CTAPHID device. Optional and vendor-specific commands may be implemented as described in respective sections of this document.

8.1.9.1.1. CTAPHID_MSG (0x03)

This command sends an encapsulated CTAP1/U2F message to the device. The semantics of the data message is defined in the U2F Raw Message Format encoding specification. Please note that keep-alive messages MAY be sent from the device to the client before the response message is returned.

**Request**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_MSG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>1..(n + 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>U2F command byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA + 1</td>
<td>n bytes of data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Response at success**
This command sends an encapsulated CTAP CBOR encoded message. The semantics of the data message is defined in the CTAP Message encoding specification.

Request

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_CBOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>1..(n + 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>CTAP command byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA + 1</td>
<td>n bytes of CBOR encoded data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Response at success

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_MSG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>1..(n + 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>CTAP status code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA + 1</td>
<td>n bytes of CBOR encoded data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.1.9.1.2. CTAPHID_CBOR (0x10)

This command has two functions.

If sent on an allocated CID, it synchronizes a channel, discarding the current transaction, buffers and state as quickly as possible. It will then be ready for a new transaction. The device then responds with the CID of the channel it received the INIT on, using that channel.

If sent on the broadcast CID, it requests the device to allocate a unique 32-bit channel identifier (CID) that can be used by the requesting application during its lifetime. The requesting application generates a nonce that is used to match the response. When the response is received, the application compares the sent nonce with the received one. After a positive match, the application stores the received channel id and uses that for subsequent transactions.

To allocate a new channel, the requesting application SHALL use the broadcast channel CTAPHID_BROADCAST_CID (0xFFFFFFFF). The device then responds with the newly allocated channel in the response, using the broadcast channel.

Request

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_INIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DATA 8-byte nonce

Response at success

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_INIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>17 (see note below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>8-byte nonce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA+8</td>
<td>4-byte channel ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA+12</td>
<td>CTAPHID protocol version identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA+13</td>
<td>Major device version number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA+14</td>
<td>Minor device version number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA+15</td>
<td>Build device version number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA+16</td>
<td>Capabilities flags</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The protocol version identifies the protocol version implemented by the device. This version of the CTAPHID protocol is 2.

A CTAPHID host SHALL accept a response size that is longer than the anticipated size to allow for future extensions of the protocol, yet maintaining backwards compatibility. Future versions will maintain the response structure of the current version, but additional fields may be added.

The meaning and interpretation of the device version number is vendor defined.

The capability flags value is a bitfield where the following bits values are defined. Unused values are reserved for future use and must be set to zero by device vendors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAPABILITY_WINK</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>If set to 1, authenticator implements CTAPHID_WINK function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAPABILITY_CBOR</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>If set to 1, authenticator implements CTAPHID_CBOR function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAPABILITY_NMSG</td>
<td>0x08</td>
<td>If set to 1, authenticator DOES NOT implement CTAPHID_MSG function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.1.9.1.4. CTAPHID_PING (0x01)

Sends a transaction to the device, which immediately echoes the same data back. This command is defined to be a uniform function for debugging, latency and performance measurements.

Request

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_PING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>0..n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>n bytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Response at success
8.1.9.1.5. CTAPHID_CANCEL (0x11)

Cancel any outstanding requests on this CID.

**Request**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_CANCEL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Response at success**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_CANCEL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.1.9.1.6. CTAPHID_ERROR (0x3F)

This command code is used in response messages only.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_ERROR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>Error code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following error codes are defined

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ERR_INVALID_CMD</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>The command in the request is invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_INVALID_PAR</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>The parameter(s) in the request is invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_INVALID_LEN</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>The length field (BCNT) is invalid for the request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_INVALID_SEQ</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>The sequence does not match expected value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_MSG_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>The message has timed out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_CHANNEL_BUSY</td>
<td>0x06</td>
<td>The device is busy for the requesting channel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_LOCK_REQUIRED</td>
<td>0x0A</td>
<td>Command requires channel lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NA</td>
<td>0x0B</td>
<td>Reserved (Removed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_OTHER</td>
<td>0x7F</td>
<td>Unspecified error</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: These values are identical to the BLE transport values.

8.1.9.1.7. CTAPHID_KEEPALIVE (0x3B)
This command code is sent while processing a CTAPHID_MSG. It should be sent at least every 100ms and whenever the status changes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_KEEPALIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>Status code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following status codes are defined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status Code</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STATUS_PROCESSING</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>The authenticator is still processing the current request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STATUS_UPNEEDED</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>The authenticator is waiting for user presence.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.1.9.2. Optional commands

The following commands are defined by this specification but are optional and does not have to be implemented.

8.1.9.2.1. CTAPHID_WINK (0x08)

The wink command performs a vendor-defined action that provides some visual or audible identification a particular authenticator. A typical implementation will do a short burst of flashes with a LED or something similar. This is useful when more than one device is attached to a computer and there is confusion which device is paired with which connection.

**Request**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_WINK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Response at success**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_WINK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.1.9.2.2. CTAPHID_LOCK (0x04)

The lock command places an exclusive lock for one channel to communicate with the device. As long as the lock is active, any other channel trying to send a message will fail. In order to prevent a stalling or crashing application to lock the device indefinitely, a lock time up to 10 seconds may be set. An application requiring a longer lock has to send repeating lock commands to maintain the lock.

**Request**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CMD</th>
<th>CTAPHID_LOCK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCNT</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.1.9.3. Vendor specific commands

A CTAPHID may implement additional vendor specific commands that are not defined in this specification, while being CTAPHID compliant. Such commands, if implemented, must use a command in the range between CTAPHID_VENDOR_FIRST (0x40) and CTAPHID_VENDOR_LAST (0x7F).

8.2. ISO7816, ISO14443 and Near Field Communication (NFC)

8.2.1. Conformance

Please refer to [ISO7816-4] for APDU definition.

8.2.2. Protocol

The general protocol between a FIDO2 client and an authenticator over ISO7816/ISO14443 is as follows:

- Client sends an applet selection command
- Authenticator replies with success if the applet is present
- Client sends a command for an operation
- Authenticator replies with response data or error

Because of timeouts that may otherwise occur on some platforms, it is RECOMMENDED that the Authenticators reply to NFC commands within 800 milliseconds.

8.2.3. Applet selection

A successful Select allows the client to know that the applet is present and active. A client SHALL send a Select to the authenticator before any other command.

The FIDO2 AID consists of the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RID</td>
<td>0xA000000647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC</td>
<td>0x2f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AX</td>
<td>0x0001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The command to select the FIDO applet is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLA</th>
<th>INS</th>
<th>P1</th>
<th>P2</th>
<th>Lc</th>
<th>Data In</th>
<th>Le</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
In response to the applet selection command, the FIDO authenticator replies with its version information string in the successful response.

Given legacy support for CTAP1/U2F, the client must determine the capabilities of the device at the selection stage.

- If the authenticator implements CTAP1/U2F, the version information SHALL be the string U2F_V2 to maintain backwards-compatibility with CTAP1/U2F-only clients.
- If the authenticator ONLY implements CTAP2, the device SHALL respond with data that is NOT U2F_V2.
- If the authenticator implements both CTAP1/U2F and CTAP2, the version information SHALL be the string U2F_V2 to maintain backwards-compatibility with CTAP1/U2F-only clients. CTAP2-aware clients may then issue a CTAP authenticatorGetInfo command to determine if the device supports CTAP2 or not.

8.2.4. Framing

Conceptually, framing defines an encapsulation of FIDO2 commands. In NFC, this encapsulation is done in an APDU following [ISO7816-4]. Fragmentation, if needed, is discussed in the following paragraph.

8.2.4.1. Commands

Commands SHALL have the following format:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLA</th>
<th>INS</th>
<th>P1</th>
<th>P2</th>
<th>Data In</th>
<th>Le</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x80</td>
<td>0x10</td>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>CTAP Command Byte</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.2.4.2. Response

Response SHALL have the following format in case of success:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Data</th>
<th>Status word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Success</td>
<td>CTAP Status code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status update</td>
<td>Status data</td>
<td>&quot;9100&quot; - OK When receiving this, the ISO transport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>layer will immediately issue an NFCCTAP_GETRESPONSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>command unless a cancel was issued. The ISO transport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>layer will provide the status data to the higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>layers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Errors</td>
<td></td>
<td>See [ISO7816-4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.2.5. Fragmentation

APDU command may hold up to 255 or 65535 bytes of data using short or extended length encoding respectively. APDU response may hold up to 256 or 65536 bytes of data using short or extended length encoding respectively.
Some requests may not fit into a short APDU command, or the expected response may not fit in a short APDU response. For this reason, FIDO2 client MAY encode APDU command in the following way:

- The request may be encoded using extended length APDU encoding.
- The request may be encoded using short APDU encoding. If the request does not fit a short APDU command, the client MUST use ISO 7816-4 APDU chaining.

Short APDU Chaining commands SHALL have the following format:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLA</th>
<th>INS</th>
<th>P1</th>
<th>P2</th>
<th>Data In</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x90</td>
<td>0x10</td>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>CTAP Payload</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXAMPLE 9**

Sample authenticatorMakeCredential request using short APDU encoding and chaining mode:

```
01A8015820687134968222EC17202E42505F8ED2B16AE22F16BB05B88C25DB9E
6264F14102A262696469746573742E63746170646E616D656E69746573742E63
74617063A362696458202866898B18F4169F069FB6CD5F0C86EA3C60A861B9A7B
6394693E0B57B7C8646E616D65714657374637461704637461702E636F
6D6B6646973706C1794E616D65695465737428437461700483A263616C672664
747978565A787562C69632DB82E579A263616C6739010064747978565A787562
6C69632DB82E579A263616C67382464747978565A787562
6B686D6132D73653726574F507A162726BF5085FC43AA411D948CC6C3706
8B8DA1D580901
```

would be sent to authenticator by platform in two short APDU commands:

- APDU command 1:

  Platform Request:
  
  ```
  90 10 00 00
  F0
  01A8015820687134968222EC17202E42505F8ED2B16AE22F16BB05B88C25DB9E
  6264F14102A262696469746573742E63746170646E616D656E69746573742E63
  74617063A362696458202866898B18F4169F069FB6CD5F0C86EA3C60A861B9A7B
  6394693E0B57B7C8646E616D65714657374637461704637461702E636F
  6D6B6646973706C1794E616D65695465737428437461700483A263616C672664
  747978565A787562C69632DB82E579A263616C6739010064747978565A787562
  6C69632DB82E579A263616C67382464747978565A787562
  6B686D6132D73653726574F507A162726BF5085FC43AA411D948CC6C3706
  8B8DA1D580901
  ```

  Authenticator Response:
  
  ```
  9000
  ```

- APDU command 2:

  Platform Request:
  
  ```
  80 10 00 00
  17
  726BF50850FC43AAA411D948CC6C37068B8DA1D580901
  00
  ```

  Authenticator Response:
  
  ```
  00
  A30166706163B6564025900A2021F5FC0B5CD22E60623BCD701CA4894809
  249B4776EB515154E57B66AE12C50000055F8A011F38A4D15800617111F9E
  D0780108F05723DD89C878568C01A7F7E444F60A501D826021218580D0F1
  7D8B268795BE1A151D166A01A15B4F6B7A3AFA4101E10EB496F3D3C501A92258
  75047F511F63257773C41882F5A642ADFF417C97F84A61978580C88866C68
  ```
Some responses may not fit into a short APDU response. For this reason, FIDO2 authenticators MUST respond in the following way:

- If the request was encoded using extended length APDU encoding, the authenticator MUST respond using the extended length APDU response format.
- If the request was encoded using short APDU encoding, the authenticator MUST respond using ISO 7816-4 APDU chaining.

### 8.2.6. Commands

#### 8.2.6.1. NFCCTAP_MSG (0x10)

The NFCCTAP_MSG command send a CTAP message to the authenticator. This command SHALL return as soon as processing is done. If the operation was not completed, it MAY return a 0x9100 result to trigger NFCCTAP_GETRESPONSE functionality if the client indicated support by setting the relevant bit in P1.

The values for P1 for the NFCCTAP_MSG command are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P1 Bits</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x80</td>
<td>The client supports NFCCTAP_GETRESPONSE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Values for P2 are all RFU and MUST be set to 0.

8.2.6.2. NFCCTAP_GETRESPONSE (0x11)

The NFCCTAP_GETRESPONSE command is issued up to receiving 0x9100 unless a cancel was issued. This command SHALL return a 0x9100 result with a status indication if it has a status update, the reply to the request with a 0x9000 result code to indicate success or an error value.

All values for P1 and P2 are RFU and MUST be set to 0x00.

8.3. Bluetooth Smart / Bluetooth Low Energy Technology

8.3.1. Conformance

Authenticator and client devices using Bluetooth Low Energy Technology SHALL conform to Bluetooth Core Specification 4.0 or later [BTCORE]. Bluetooth SIG specified UUID values SHALL be found on the Assigned Numbers website [BTASSNUM].

8.3.2. Pairing

Bluetooth Low Energy Technology is a long-range wireless protocol and thus has several implications for privacy, security, and overall user-experience. Because it is wireless, Bluetooth Low Energy Technology may be subject to monitoring, injection, and other network-level attacks.

For these reasons, clients and authenticators MUST create and use a long-term link key (LTK) and SHALL encrypt all communications. Authenticator MUST never use short term keys.

Because Bluetooth Low Energy Technology has poor ranging (i.e., there is no good indication of proximity), it may not be clear to a FIDO client with which Bluetooth Low Energy Technology authenticator it should communicate. Pairing is the only mechanism defined in this protocol to ensure that FIDO clients are interacting with the expected Bluetooth Low Energy Technology authenticator. As a result, authenticator manufacturers SHOULD instruct users to avoid performing Bluetooth pairing in a public space such as a cafe, shop or train station.

One disadvantage of using standard Bluetooth pairing is that the pairing is "system-wide" on most operating systems. That is, if an authenticator is paired to a FIDO client which resides on an operating system where Bluetooth pairing is "system-wide", then any application on that device might be able to interact with an authenticator. This issue is discussed further in Implementation Considerations.

8.3.3. Link Security

For Bluetooth Low Energy Technology connections, the authenticator SHALL enforce Security Mode 1, Level 2 (unauthenticated pairing with encryption) or Security Mode 1, Level 3 (authenticated pairing with encryption) before any FIDO messages are exchanged.

8.3.4. Framing

Conceptually, framing defines an encapsulation of FIDO raw messages responsible for correct transmission of a single request and its response by the transport layer.
All requests and their responses are conceptually written as a single frame. The format of the requests and responses is given first as complete frames. Fragmentation is discussed next for each type of transport layer.

8.3.4.1. Request from Client to Authenticator

Request frames must have the following format

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offset</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>CMD</td>
<td>Command identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>HLEN</td>
<td>High part of data length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>LLEN</td>
<td>Low part of data length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>Data (s is equal to the length)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Supported commands are PING, MSG, and CANCEL. The constant values for them are described below.

The CANCEL command cancels any outstanding MSG commands.

The data format for the MSG command is defined in §6 Message Encoding.

8.3.4.2. Response from Authenticator to Client

Response frames must have the following format, which share a similar format to the request frames:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offset</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>STAT</td>
<td>Response status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>HLEN</td>
<td>High part of data length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>LLEN</td>
<td>Low part of data length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>Data (s is equal to the length)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the status byte in the response is the same as the command byte in the request, the response is a successful response. The value ERROR indicates an error, and the response data contains an error code as a variable-length, big-endian integer. The constant value for ERROR is described below.

Note that the errors sent in this response are errors at the encapsulation layer, e.g., indicating an incorrectly formatted request, or possibly an error communicating with the authenticator’s FIDO message processing layer. Errors reported by the FIDO message processing layer itself are considered a success from the encapsulation layer’s point of view and are reported as a complete MSG response.

Data format is defined in §6 Message Encoding.

8.3.4.3. Command, Status, and Error constants

The COMMAND constants and values are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PING</td>
<td>0x81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The KEEPALIVE command contains a single byte with the following possible values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status Constant</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PROCESSING</td>
<td>0x01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UP_NEEDED</td>
<td>0x02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFU</td>
<td>0x00, 0x03-0xFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ERROR constants and values are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Constant</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ERR_INVALID_CMD</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>The command in the request is unknown/invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_INVALID_PAR</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>The parameter(s) of the command is/are invalid or missing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_INVALID_LEN</td>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>The length of the request is invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_INVALID_SEQ</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>The sequence number is invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_REQ_TIMEOUT</td>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>The request timed out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NA</td>
<td>0x06</td>
<td>Value reserved (HID)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NA</td>
<td>0x0a</td>
<td>Value reserved (HID)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NA</td>
<td>0x0b</td>
<td>Value reserved (HID)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERR_OTHER</td>
<td>0x7f</td>
<td>Other, unspecified error</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: These values are identical to the HID transport values.

8.3.5. GATT Service Description

This profile defines two roles: FIDO Authenticator and FIDO Client.

- The FIDO Client SHALL be a GATT Client.
- The FIDO Authenticator SHALL be a GATT Server.

The following figure illustrates the mandatory services and characteristics that SHALL be offered by a FIDO Authenticator as part of its GATT server:
Figure 4 Mandatory GATT services and characteristics that MUST be offered by a FIDO Authenticator. Note that the Generic Access Profile Service ([BTGAS]) is not present as it is already mandatory for any Bluetooth Low Energy Technology compliant device.

The table below summarizes additional GATT sub-procedure requirements for a FIDO Authenticator (GATT Server) beyond those required by all GATT Servers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GATT Sub-Procedure</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Write Characteristic Value</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notifications</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Characteristic Descriptors</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Characteristic Descriptors</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table below summarizes additional GATT sub-procedure requirements for a FIDO Client (GATT Client) beyond those required by all GATT Clients.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GATT Sub-Procedure</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Discover All Primary Services</td>
<td>(*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discover Primary Services by Service UUID</td>
<td>(*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discover All Characteristics of a Service</td>
<td>(**)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discover Characteristics by UUID</td>
<td>(**)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discover All Characteristic Descriptors</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Characteristic Value</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Characteristic Value</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Characteristic Descriptors</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Characteristic Descriptors</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(*): Mandatory to support at least one of these sub-procedures. (**:): Mandatory to support at least one of these sub-procedures. Other GATT sub-procedures may be used if supported by both client and server.

Specifics of each service are explained below. In the following descriptions: all values are big-endian coded, all strings are in UTF-8 encoding, and any characteristics not mentioned explicitly are optional.
An authenticator SHALL implement the FIDO Service described below. The UUID for the FIDO GATT service is 0xFFF; it SHALL be declared as a Primary Service. The service contains the following characteristics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic Name</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>UUID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FIDO Control Point</td>
<td>fidoControlPoint</td>
<td>Write</td>
<td>Defined by Vendor (20-512 bytes)</td>
<td>F1D0FFF1-DEAA-ECEE-B42FC9BA7ED623BB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIDO Status</td>
<td>fidoStatus</td>
<td>Notify</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>F1D0FFF2-DEAA-ECEE-B42FC9BA7ED623BB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIDO Control Point Length</td>
<td>fidoControlPointLength</td>
<td>Read</td>
<td>2 bytes</td>
<td>F1D0FFF3-DEAA-ECEE-B42FC9BA7ED623BB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIDO Service Revision Bitfield</td>
<td>fidoServiceRevisionBitfield</td>
<td>Read/Write</td>
<td>Defined by Vendor (1+ bytes)</td>
<td>F1D0FFF4-DEAA-ECEE-B42FC9BA7ED623BB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIDO Service Revision</td>
<td>fidoServiceRevision</td>
<td>Read</td>
<td>Defined by Vendor (20-512 bytes)</td>
<td>0x2A28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

fidoControlPoint is a write-only command buffer.

fidoStatus is a notify-only response attribute. The authenticator will send a series of notifications on this attribute with a maximum length of (ATT_MTU-3) using the response frames defined above. This mechanism is used because this results in a faster transfer speed compared to a notify-read combination.

fidoControlPointLength defines the maximum size in bytes of a single write request to fidoControlPoint. This value SHALL be between 20 and 512.

fidoServiceRevision is a deprecated field that is only relevant to U2F 1.0 support. It defines the revision of the U2F Service. The value is a UTF-8 string. For version 1.0 of the specification, the value fidoServiceRevision SHALL be 1.0 or in raw bytes: 0x312e30. This field SHALL be omitted if protocol version 1.0 is not supported.

The fidoServiceRevision Characteristic MAY include a Characteristic Presentation Format descriptor with format value 0x19, UTF-8 String.

fidoServiceRevisionBitfield defines the revision of the FIDO Service. The value is a bit field which each bit representing a version. For each version bit the value is 1 if the version is supported, 0 if it is not. The length of the bitfield is 1 or more bytes. All bytes that are 0 are omitted if all the following bytes are 0 too. The byte order is big endian. The client SHALL write a value to this characteristic with exactly 1 bit set before sending any FIDO commands unless u2FServiceRevision is present and U2F 1.0 compatibility is desired. If only U2F version 1.0 is supported, this characteristic SHALL be omitted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Byte (left to right)</th>
<th>Bit</th>
<th>Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For example, a device that only supports FIDO2 Rev 1 will only have a fidoServiceRevisionBitfield characteristic of length 1 with value 0x20.

8.3.5.2. Device Information Service

An authenticator SHALL implement the Device Information Service with the following characteristics:

- Manufacturer Name String
- Model Number String
- Firmware Revision String

All values for the Device Information Service are left to the vendors. However, vendors should not create uniquely identifiable values so that authenticators do not become a method of tracking users.

8.3.5.3. Generic Access Profile Service

Every authenticator SHALL implement the Generic Access Profile Service with the following characteristics:

- Device Name
- Appearance

8.3.6. Protocol Overview

The general overview of the communication protocol follows:

1. Authenticator advertises the FIDO Service.
2. Client scans for authenticator advertising the FIDO Service.
3. Client performs characteristic discovery on the authenticator.
4. If not already paired, the client and authenticator SHALL perform BLE pairing and create a LTK. Authenticator SHALL only allow connections from previously bonded clients without user intervention.
5. Client checks if the fidoServiceRevisionBitfield characteristic is present. If so, the client selects a supported version by writing a value with a single bit set.
6. Client reads the fidoControlPointLength characteristic.
7. Client registers for notifications on the fidoStatus characteristic.
8. Client writes a request (e.g., an enroll request) into the fidoControlPoint characteristic.
9. Optionally, the client writes a CANCEL command to the fidoControlPoint characteristic to cancel the pending request.
10. Authenticator evaluates the request and responds by sending notifications over the fidoStatus characteristic.
11. The protocol completes when either:
    - The client unregisters for notifications on the fidoStatus characteristic, or:
8.3.7. Authenticator Advertising Format

When advertising, the authenticator SHALL advertise the FIDO service UUID.

When advertising, the authenticator MAY include the TxPower value in the advertisement (see [BTXPLAD]).

When advertising in pairing mode, the authenticator SHALL either: (1) set the LE Limited Mode bit to zero and the LE General Discoverable bit to one OR (2) set the LE Limited Mode bit to one and the LE General Discoverable bit to zero. When advertising in non-pairing mode, the authenticator SHALL set both the LE Limited Mode bit and the LE General Discoverable Mode bit to zero in the Advertising Data Flags.

The advertisement MAY also carry a device name which is distinctive and user-identifiable. For example, "ACME Key" would be an appropriate name, while "XJS4" would not be.

The authenticator SHALL also implement the Generic Access Profile [BTGAP] and Device Information Service [BDIS], both of which also provide a user-friendly name for the device that could be used by the client.

It is not specified when or how often an authenticator should advertise, instead that flexibility is left to manufacturers.

8.3.8. Requests

Clients SHOULD make requests by connecting to the authenticator and performing a write into the fidoControlPoint characteristic.

Upon receiving a CANCEL request, the authenticator SHALL cancel any outstanding request. The authenticator SHALL send a single reply with status CANCEL and data length 0, regardless of whether a request was outstanding. It will not send a reply for the cancelled request. The authenticator MAY power down after a CANCEL. If the cancelled request required User Presence or User Verification, these states MUST be invalidated by the CANCEL request.

8.3.9. Responses

Authenticators SHOULD respond to clients by sending notifications on the fidoStatus characteristic.

Some authenticators might alert users or prompt them to complete the test of user presence (e.g., via sound, light, vibration). Upon receiving any request, the authenticators SHALL send KEEPALIVE commands every kKeepAliveMillis milliseconds until completing processing the commands. While the authenticator is processing the request the KEEPALIVE command will contain status PROCESSING. If the authenticator is waiting to complete the Test of User Presence, the KEEPALIVE command will contains status UP_NEEDED. While waiting to complete the Test of User Presence, the authenticator MAY alert the user (e.g., by flashing) in order to prompt the user to complete the test of user presence. As soon the authenticator has completed processing and confirmed user presence, it SHALL stop sending KEEPALIVE commands, and send the reply.

Upon receiving a KEEPALIVE command, the client SHALL assume the authenticator is still processing the command; the client SHALL not resend the command. The authenticator SHALL continue sending KEEPALIVE messages at least every kKeepAliveMillis to indicate that it is still handling the request. Until a client-defined timeout occurs, the client SHALL NOT move on to other devices when it receives a KEEPALIVE with UP_NEEDED status, as it knows this is a device that can satisfy its request.

8.3.10. Framing fragmentation

A single request/response sent over Bluetooth Low Energy Technology MAY be split over multiple writes and
notifications, due to the inherent limitations of Bluetooth Low Energy Technology which is not currently meant for large messages. Frames are fragmented in the following way:

A frame is divided into an initialization fragment and one or more continuation fragments.

An initialization fragment is defined as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offset</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>CMD</td>
<td>Command identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>HLEN</td>
<td>High part of data length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>LLEN</td>
<td>Low part of data length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0 to (maxLen - 3)</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>Data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

where maxLen is the maximum packet size supported by the characteristic or notification.

In other words, the start of an initialization fragment is indicated by setting the high bit in the first byte. The subsequent two bytes indicate the total length of the frame, in big-endian order. The first maxLen - 3 bytes of data follow.

Continuation fragments are defined as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offset</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>SEQ</td>
<td>Packet sequence 0x00..0x7f (high bit always cleared)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0 to (maxLen - 1)</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>Data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

where maxLen is the maximum packet size supported by the characteristic or notification.

In other words, continuation fragments begin with a sequence number, beginning at 0, implicitly with the high bit cleared. The sequence number must wrap around to 0 after reaching the maximum sequence number of 0x7f.

Example for sending a PING command with 40 bytes of data with a maxLen of 20 bytes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Bytes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>[81028] [17 bytes of data]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>[00] [19 bytes of data]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>[01] [4 bytes of data]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example for sending a ping command with 400 bytes of data with a maxLen of 512 bytes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Bytes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>[81024] [400 bytes of data]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.3.11. Notifications

A client needs to register for notifications before it can receive them. Bluetooth Core Specification 4.0 or later [BT CORE] forces a device to remember the notification registration status over different connections [BTCCC]. Unless a client explicitly unregisters for notifications, the registration will be automatically restored when reconnecting. A client MAY therefore check the notification status upon connection and only register if notifications aren’t already registered. Please note that some clients MAY disable notifications from a power management...
point of view (see below) and the notification registration is remembered per bond, not per client. A client MUST NOT remember the notification status in its own data storage.

8.3.12. Implementation Considerations

8.3.12.1. Bluetooth pairing: Client considerations

As noted in §8.3.2 Pairing, a disadvantage of using standard Bluetooth pairing is that the pairing is "system-wide" on most operating systems. That is, if an authenticator is paired to a FIDO client that resides on an operating system where Bluetooth pairing is "system-wide", then any application on that device might be able to interact with an authenticator. This poses both security and privacy risks to users.

While client operating system security is partly out of FIDO’s scope, further revisions of this specification MAY propose mitigations for this issue.

8.3.12.2. Bluetooth pairing: Authenticator considerations

The method to put the authenticator into Pairing Mode should be such that it is not easy for the user to do accidentally especially if the pairing method is Just Works. For example, the action could be pressing a physically recessed button or pressing multiple buttons. A visible or audible cue that the authenticator is in Pairing Mode should be considered. As a counter example, a silent, long press of a single non-recessed button is not advised as some users naturally hold buttons down during regular operation.

Note that at times, authenticators may legitimately receive communication from an unpaired device. For example, a user attempts to use an authenticator for the first time with a new client; he turns it on, but forgets to put the authenticator into pairing mode. In this situation, after connecting to the authenticator, the client will notify the user that he needs to pair his authenticator. The authenticator should make it easy for the user to do so, e.g., by not requiring the user to wait for a timeout before being able to enable pairing mode.

Some client platforms (most notably iOS) do not expose the AD Flag LE Limited and General Discoverable Mode bits to applications. For this reason, authenticators are also strongly recommended to include the Service Data field [BTSD] in the Scan Response. The Service Data field is 3 or more octets long. This allows the Flags field to be extended while using the minimum number of octets within the data packet. All octets that are 0x00 are not transmitted as long as all other octets after that octet are also 0x00 and it is not the first octet after the service UUID. The first 2 bytes contain the FIDO Service UUID, the following bytes are flag bytes.

To help clients show the correct UX, authenticators can use the Service Data field to specify whether or not authenticators will require a Passkey (PIN) during pairing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service Data Bit</th>
<th>Meaning (if set)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Device is in pairing mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Device requires Passkey Entry [BTPESTK].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.3.13. Handling command completion

It is important for low-power devices to be able to conserve power by shutting down or switching to a lower-power state when they have satisfied a client’s requests. However, the FIDO protocol makes this hard as it typically includes more than one command/response. This is especially true if a user has more than one key handle associated with an account or identity, multiple key handles may need to be tried before getting a successful outcome. Furthermore, clients that fail to send follow up commands in a timely fashion may cause the authenticator to drain its battery by staying powered up anticipating more commands.

A further consideration is to ensure that a user is not confused about which command she is confirming by
completing the test of user presence. That is, if a user performs the test of user presence, that action should perform exactly one operation.

We combine these considerations into the following series of recommendations:

- Upon initial connection to an authenticator, and upon receipt of a response from an authenticator, if a client has more commands to issue, the client MUST transmit the next command or fragment within kMaxCommandTransmitDelayMillis milliseconds.

- Upon final response from an authenticator, if the client decides it has no more commands to send it should indicate this by disabling notifications on the fidoStatus characteristic. When the notifications are disabled the authenticator may enter a low power state or disconnect and shut down.

- Any time the client wishes to send a FIDO message, it must have first enabled notifications on the fidoStatus characteristic and wait for the ATT acknowledgement to be sure the authenticator is ready to process messages.

- Upon successful completion of a command which required a test of user presence, e.g. upon a successful authentication or registration command, the authenticator can assume the client is satisfied, and MAY reset its state or power down.

- Upon sending a command response that did not consume a test of user presence, the authenticator MUST assume that the client may wish to initiate another command and leave the connection open until the client closes it or until a timeout of at least kErrorWaitMillis elapses. Examples of command responses that do not consume user presence include failed authenticate or register commands, as well as get version responses, whether successful or not. After kErrorWaitMillis milliseconds have elapsed without further commands from a client, an authenticator MAY reset its state or power down.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kMaxCommandTransmitDelayMillis</td>
<td>1500 milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kErrorWaitMillis</td>
<td>2000 milliseconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kKeepAliveMillis</td>
<td>500 milliseconds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.3.14. Data throughput

Bluetooth Low Energy Technology does not have particularly high throughput, this can cause noticeable latency to the user if request/responses are large. Some ways that implementers can reduce latency are:

- Support the maximum MTU size allowable by hardware (up to the 512-byte max from the Bluetooth specifications).

- Make the attestation certificate as small as possible; do not include unnecessary extensions.

8.3.15. Advertising

Though the standard does not appear to mandate it (in any way that we’ve found thus far), advertising and device discovery seems to work better when the authenticators advertise on all 3 advertising channels and not just one.

8.3.16. Authenticator Address Type

In order to enhance the user’s privacy and specifically to guard against tracking, it is recommended that authenticators use Resolvable Private Addresses (RPAs) instead of static addresses.
9. Defined Extensions

This section defines an authenticator extension and corresponding WebAuthn extension.

9.1. HMAC Secret Extension (hmac-secret)

**Extension identifier**

hmac-secret

This extension is used by the platform to retrieve a symmetric secret from the authenticator when it needs to encrypt or decrypt data using that symmetric secret. This symmetric secret is scoped to a credential. The authenticator and the platform each only have the part of the complete secret to prevent offline attacks. This extension can be used to maintain different secrets on different machines.

**Client extension input**

`create()`: A boolean value to indicate that this extension is requested by the Relying Party.

```plaintext
definition partial dictionary AuthenticationExtensionsClientInputs {
  bool hmacCreateSecret;
}
```

`get()`: A JavaScript object defined as follows:

```plaintext
definition dictionary HMACGetSecretInput {
  required ArrayBuffer salt1; // 32-byte random data
  ArrayBuffer salt2; // Optional additional 32-byte random data
}
definition partial dictionary AuthenticationExtensionsClientInputs {
  HMACGetSecretInput hmacGetSecret;
}
```

The salt2 input is optional. It can be used when the platform wants to roll over the symmetric secret in one operation.

**Client extension processing**

1. If present in a `create()`:
   1. If set to true, pass a CBOR true value as the authenticator extension input.
   2. If set to false, do not process this extension.

2. If present in a `get()`:
   1. Verify that salt1 is a 32-byte ArrayBuffer.
   2. If salt2 is present, verify that it is a 32-byte ArrayBuffer.
   3. Pass salt1 and, if present, salt2 as the authenticator extension input.

**Client extension output**

`create()`: Boolean true value indicating that the authenticator has processed the extension.

```plaintext
definition partial dictionary AuthenticationExtensionsClientOutputs {
  bool hmacCreateSecret;
}
```

`get()`: A dictionary with the following data:

```plaintext
**Authenticator extension input**

Same as the client extension input, except represented in CBOR.

**Authenticator extension processing**

- **authenticatorGetInfo additional behaviors**

  The authenticator indicates to the platform that it supports the "hmac-secret" extension via the "extensions" parameter in the `authenticatorGetInfo` response.

  **EXAMPLE 10**
  Sample CTAP2 authenticatorGetInfo response (CBOR):

  ```
  { 
    1: ["FIDO_2_0"],
    2: ["hmac-secret"],
    ... 
  }
  ```

  - **authenticatorMakeCredential additional behaviors**

    The platform sends the `authenticatorMakeCredential` request with the following CBOR map entry in the "extensions" field to the authenticator:

    - "hmac-secret": true

  **EXAMPLE 11**
  Sample CTAP2 authenticatorMakeCredential Request (CBOR):

  ```
  { 
    1: h'687134968222EC17202E42505F8ED2B16AE22F16BB05B88C25DB9E602645F141',
    ... 
    6: {"hmac-secret": true},
    7: {"rk": true}
  }
  ```

  - The authenticator generates a random 32-byte value (called CredRandom) and associates it with the credential.
  - The authenticator responds with the following CBOR map entry in the "extensions" fields to the authenticator:

    - "hmac-secret": true

  **EXAMPLE 12**
  Sample "extensions" field value in the authenticatorData:

  ```
  {"hmac-secret": true}
  ```

- **authenticatorGetAssertion additional behaviors**
The platform gets \texttt{sharedSecret} from the authenticator.

The platform sends the authenticatorGetAssertion request with the following CBOR map entry in the "extensions" field to the authenticator:

- "hmac-secret":
  - keyAgreement(0x01): public key of platformKeyAgreementKey, "bG".
  - saltEnc(0x02): Encrypt one or two salts (Called salt1 (32 bytes) and salt2 (32 bytes)) using \texttt{sharedSecret} as follows:
    - One salt case: \texttt{AES256-CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, salt1 (32 bytes))}.
    - Two salt case: \texttt{AES256-CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, salt1 (32 bytes) || salt2 (32 bytes))}.
  - saltAuth(0x03): \texttt{LEFT(HMAC-SHA-256(sharedSecret, saltEnc), 16)}.

The platform sends the first 16 bytes of the HMAC-SHA-256 result.

\textbf{EXAMPLE 13}
Sample "extensions" field value in the authenticatorData:

```json
4: {
  "hmac-secret": {
    1: {
      1: 2,
      3: -25,
      -1: 1,
      -2: h'0DE6479775C5B704BF780073B909E1B36A29132E187709C1E364F299F8847769',
      -3: h'3B8E9B6EDCC1AC8328BA63975A546AF85FC7C51B35BEF9E3E47AC6F34248B35',
    },
    2: h'59E195FC58C614C07C99F587495F374871E9873A0375B1A1EED200926C3C6BA528D7748AF9592B0E7A88851887F214E13CFDF406C3A1C570529BABF987D4A',
    3: h'17B93F3B0895380ED512EC6F542CE140'
  }
}
```

The authenticator performs the following operations when processing this extension:

- The authenticator waits for user consent.
- The authenticator generates "sharedSecret": SHA–256((abG).x) using the private key of authenticatorKeyAgreementKey, "a" and the public key of platformKeyAgreementKey, "bG".
  - SHA-256 is done over only the "x" curve point of "abG".
  - See [RFC6090] Section 4.1 and Appendix (C.2) of [SP800-56A] for more ECDH key agreement protocol details and key representation information.
- The authenticator verifies saltEnc by generating \texttt{LEFT(HMAC-SHA-256(sharedSecret, saltEnc), 16)} and matching against the input saltAuth parameter.
- The authenticator generates one or two HMAC-SHA-256 values, depending upon whether it received one salt (32 bytes) or two salts (64 bytes):
  - output1: \texttt{HMAC–SHA–256(CredRandom, salt1)
- output2: HMAC-SHA-256(CredRandom, salt2)

- The authenticator returns output1 and, when there were two salts, output2 encrypted to the platform using sharedSecret as part of "extensions" parameter:
  - One salt case:"hmac-secret": AES256-CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, output1 {32 bytes})
  - Two salt case:"hmac-secret": AES256-CBC(sharedSecret, IV=0, output1 {32 bytes} || output2 {32 bytes})

**EXAMPLE 14**
Sample "extensions" field value in the authenticatorData:

```
4: { "hmac-secret": h'1F91526CAE456E4CBB71C4DE7BB77157E6E54DFED3015D7D4DB2269ACDE6A1B8D267EBBF848EB95A68E79C7AC705E351D543D0165887D6290FD47A40C4' }
```
10. IANA Considerations

10.1. WebAuthn Extension Identifier Registrations
This section registers the extension identifier values defined in Section §9 Defined Extensions in the IANA "WebAuthn Extension Identifier" registry.

- WebAuthn Extension Identifier: hmac-secret
- Description: This registration extension and authentication extension enables the platform to retrieve a symmetric secret scoped to the credential from the authenticator.
- Specification Document: Section §9.1 HMAC Secret Extension (hmac-secret) of this specification

11. Security Considerations

See FIDO Security Reference document [FIDOSecRef].

Index

Terms defined by this specification

CTAP2 canonical CBOR encoding form

hmacCreateSecret
dict-member for AuthenticationExtensionsClientInputs
dict-member for AuthenticationExtensionsClientOutputs

hmacGetSecret
dict-member for AuthenticationExtensionsClientInputs
dict-member for AuthenticationExtensionsClientOutputs

HMACGetSecretInput

HMACGetSecretOutput

output1

output2

salt1

salt2

Terms defined by reference

[credential-management-1] defines the following terms:

create()
get()

[WebAuthN] defines the following terms:

AuthenticationExtensionsClientInputs
AuthenticationExtensionsClientOutputs

[WebIDL] defines the following terms:

ArrayBuffer

References

Normative References


[BTCCC]
Client Characteristic Configuration. Bluetooth Core Specification 4.0, Volume 3, Part G, Section 3.3.3.3
URL: https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/adopted-specifications

[BTCORE]
Bluetooth Core Specification 4.0. URL: https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/adopted-specifications

[BTDIS]
Device Information Service v1.1. URL: https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/adopted-specifications

[BTGAP]
Generic Access Profile. Bluetooth Core Specification 4.0, Volume 3, Part C, Section 12 URL:

[BTGAS]
Generic Access Profile service. Bluetooth Core Specification 4.0, Volume 3, Part C, Section 12 URL:
https://developer.bluetooth.org/gatt/services/Pages/ServiceViewer.aspx?
u=org.bluetooth.service.generic_access.xml

[BTPESTK]
Passkey Entry. Bluetooth Core Specification 4.0, Volume 3, Part H, Section 2.3.5.3 URL:

[BTSD]
Bluetooth Service Data AD Type. Bluetooth Core Specification 4.0, Volume 3, Part C, Section 11 URL:

[BTXPLAD]
Bluetooth TX Power AD Type. Bluetooth Core Specification 4.0, Volume 3, Part C, Section 11 URL:

[CREIDENTIAL-MANAGEMENT-1]
Mike West. Credential Management Level 1, 4 August 2017. WD. URL: https://www.w3.org/TR/credential-management-1/

[FIDOSecRef]
R. Lindemann; D. Baghdasaryan; B. Hill. FIDO Security Reference. Implementation Draft. URL:
https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-id-20180227/fido-security-ref-v2.0-id-20180227.html

[FIDOServerGuidelines]

[IANA-COSE-ALGS-REG]
Jim Schaad; et al. IANA CBOR Object Signing and Encryption (COSE) Algorithms Registry. URL:
https://www.iana.org/assignments/cose/cose.xhtml#algorithms

[ISO7816-4]

[RFC6090]

[RFC7049]

[RFC8152]

[SEC1V2]

[SP800-56A]

[U2FBlk]
Informative References

[RFC2119]

IDL Index

```
partial dictionary AuthenticationExtensionsClientInputs {
  bool hmacCreateSecret;
};

dictionary HMACGetSecretInput {
  required ArrayBuffer salt1; // 32-byte random data
  ArrayBuffer salt2; // Optional additional 32-byte random data
};

partial dictionary AuthenticationExtensionsClientInputs {
  HMACGetSecretInput hmacGetSecret;
};

partial dictionary AuthenticationExtensionsClientOutputs {
  bool hmacCreateSecret;
};

dictionary HMACGetSecretOutput {
  required ArrayBuffer output1;
  ArrayBuffer output2;
};

partial dictionary AuthenticationExtensionsClientOutputs {
  HMACGetSecretOutput hmacGetSecret;
};```
Abstract

The FIDO family of protocols introduce a new security concept, Application Facets, to describe the scope of user credentials and how a trusted computing base which supports application isolation may make access control decisions about which keys can be used by which applications and web origins.

This document describes the motivations for and requirements for implementing the Application Facet concept and how it applies to the FIDO protocols.

Table of Contents

1. Notation
   1.1 Key Words

2. Overview
   2.1 Motivation
   2.2 Avoiding App-Phishing
   2.3 Comparison to OAuth and OAuth2
   2.4 Non-Goals

3. The AppID and FacetID Assertions
   3.1 Processing Rules for AppID and FacetID Assertions
      3.1.1 Determining the FacetID of a Calling Application
      3.1.2 Determining if a Caller's FacetID is Authorized for an AppID
      3.1.3 TrustedFacet List and Structure
         3.1.3.1 Dictionary TrustedFacetList Members
         3.1.3.2 Dictionary TrustedFacets Members
      3.1.4 AppID Example 1
While the FIDO approach is preferable for many reasons, it introduces several challenges and may even be sent in the cleartext portion of a protocol handshake without the user's notification or consent.

Modern networked applications typically present several ways that a user can interact with them. This document introduces the concept of an Application Facet to describe the identities of a single logical application across various platforms. For example, the application MyBank may have an Android app, an iOS app, and a Web app accessible from a browser. These are all facets of the MyBank application.

The FIDO architecture provides for simpler and stronger authentication than traditional username and password approaches while avoiding many of the shortfalls of alternative authentication schemes. At the core of the FIDO protocols are challenge and response operations performed with a public/private keypair that serves as a user's credential.

The FIDO protocol provides for user-friendly verification ceremonies to allow access to registered keys, such as entering a simple PIN code and touching a device, or scanning a finger. It should not matter for security purposes if the user re-uses the same verification inputs across Relying Parties, as long as the system is designed to avoid re-use.

The FIDO conceptually sets a scope for registered keys to the tuple of (Username, Authenticator, Relying Party). But what constitutes a Relying Party? It is quite common for a user to access the same set of services from a Relying Party, on the same device, in one or more web browsers and register a new FIDO key, it is undesirable that the user should have to repeat this ceremony multiple times on the same device, once for each browser or app.

To minimize frequently-encountered issues around privacy, entanglements with concepts of "identity", and the necessity for trusted third parties, keys in FIDO are tightly scoped and dynamically provisioned between the user and each Relying Party and only optionally associated with a server-assigned username. This approach contrasts with, for example, traditional PKIX client certificates as used in TLS, which introduce a trusted third party, mix in their implementation details identity assertions with holder-of-key cryptographic proofs, lack audience restrictions, and may even be sent in the cleartext portion of a protocol handshake without the user's notification or consent.

While the FIDO approach is preferable for many reasons, it introduces several challenges.

- What set of Web origins and native applications (facets) make up a single logical application and how can they be reliably identified?
- How can we avoid making the user register a new key for each web browser or application on their device that accesses services controlled by the same target entity?
- How can access to registered keys be shared without violating the security guarantees around application isolation and protection from malicious code that users expect on their devices?
- How can a user roam credentials between multiple devices, each with a user-friendly Trusted Computing Base for FIDO?

This document describes how FIDO addresses these goals (where adequate platform mechanisms exist for enforcement) by allowing an application to declare a credential scope that crosses all the various facets it presents to the user.

2.1 Motivation

FIDO conceptually sets a scope for registered keys to the tuple of (Username, Authenticator, Relying Party). But what constitutes a Relying Party? It is quite common for a user to access the same set of services from a Relying Party, on the same device, in one or more web browsers as well as one or more dedicated apps. As the Relying Party may require the user to perform a costly ceremony in order to prove her identity and register a new FIDO key, it is undesirable that the user should have to repeat this ceremony multiple times on the same device, once for each browser or app.

2.2 Avoiding App-Phishing

FIDO provides for user-friendly verification ceremonies to allow access to registered keys, such as entering a simple PIN code and touching a device, or scanning a finger. It should not matter for security purposes if the user re-uses the same verification inputs across Relying Parties, and in the case of a biometric, she may have no choice.

Modern operating systems that use an "app store" distribution model often make a promise to the user that it is "safe to try" any app. They do this by providing strong isolation between applications, so that they may not read each others' data or mutually interfere, and by requiring explicit user permission to access shared system resources.

If a user were to download a maliciously constructed game that instructs her to activate her FIDO authenticator in order to "save your progress" but actually unlocks her banking credential and takes over her account, FIDO has failed, because the risk of phishing has only been moved from the password to an app download. FIDO must not violate a platform's promise that any app is "safe to try" by keeping good custody of the high-value shared state that a registered key represents.

2.3 Comparison to OAuth and OAuth2

The OAuth and OAuth2 protocols are designed for a server-to-server security model with the assumption that each application instance can be issued, and keep, an "application secret". This approach is ill-suited to the "app store" security model. Although it is common for services to provision an OAuth-style application secret into their apps in an attempt to allow only authorized/official apps to connect, any such "secret" is in fact shared among everyone with access to the app store and can be trivially recovered thorough basic reverse engineering.

In contrast, FIDO's facet concept is designed for the "app store" model from the start. It relies on client-side platform isolation features to make sure that a key registered by a user with a member of a well-behaved "trusted club" stays within that trusted club, even if the user later installs a
malicious app, and does not require any secrets hard-coded into a shared package to do so. The user must, however, still make good
decisions about which apps and browsers they are willing to perform a registration ceremony with. App store policing can assist here by
removing applications which solicit users to register FIDO keys to for Relying Parties in order to make illegitimate or fraudulent use of them.

2.4 Non-Goals

The Application Facet concept does not attempt to strongly identify the calling application to a service across a network. Remote attestation of
an application identity is an explicit non-goal.

If an unauthorized app can convince a user to provide all the information to it required to register a new FIDO key, the Relying Party cannot use
FIDO protocols or the Facet concept to recognize as unauthorized, or deny such an application from performing FIDO operations, and an
application that a user has chosen to trust in such a manner can also share access to a key outside of the mechanisms described in this
document.

The facet mechanism provides a way for registered keys to maintain their proper scope when created and accessed from a Trusted Computing
Base (TCB) that provides isolation of malicious apps. A user can also roam their credentials between multiple devices with user-friendly TCBs
and credentials will retain their proper scope if this mechanism is correctly implemented by each. However, no guarantees can be made in
environments where the TCB is user-hostile, such as a device with malicious code operating with "root" level permissions. On environments
that do not provide application isolation but run all code with the privileges of the user, (e.g. traditional desktop operating systems) an intact
TCB, including web browsers, may successfully enforce scoping of credentials for web origins only, but cannot meaningfully enforce application
scoping.

3. The AppID and FacetID Assertions

When a user performs a Registration operation [UAFArchOverview] a new private key is created by their authenticator, and the public key is
sent to the Relying Party. As part of this process, each key is associated with an AppID. The AppID is a URL carried as part of the protocol
message sent by the server and indicates the target for this credential. By default, the audience of the credential is restricted to the Same
Origin of the AppID. In some circumstances, a Relying Party may desire to apply a larger scope to a key. If that AppID URL has the https
scheme, a FIDO client may be able to dereference and process it as a TrustedFacetList that designates a scope or audience restriction that
includes multiple facets, such as other web origins within the same DNS zone of control of the AppID’s origin, or URLs indicating the identity of
other types of trusted facets such as mobile apps.

3.1 Processing Rules for AppID and FacetID Assertions

3.1.1 Determining the FacetID of a Calling Application

In the Web case, the FacetID must be the Web Origin [RFC6454] of the web page triggering the FIDO operation, written as a URI with an
empty path. Default ports are omitted and any path component is ignored.

An example FacetID is shown below:

https://login.mycorp.com/

In the Android [ANDROID] case, the FacetID must be a URI derived from the Base64 encoded SHA-256 (or SHA-1) hash of the APK signing
certificate [APK-Signing]:

android:apk-key-hash-sha256:<base64_encoded_sha256_hash-of-apk-signing-cert>
android:apk-key-hash:<base64_encoded_sha1_hash-of-apk-signing-cert>

The SHA-1 hash can be computed as follows:

EXAMPLE 1: Computing an APK signing certificate SHA256 hash

# Export the signing certificate in DER format, hash, base64 encode and trim '='
keytool -exportcert \ 
-alias <alias-of-entry> \ 
-keystore <path-to-apk-signing-keystore> &>2 /dev/null | \ 
openssl sha256 -binary | \ 
openssl base64 | \ 
sed 's/=//g'

EXAMPLE 2: Computing an APK signing certificate SHA1 hash

# Export the signing certificate in DER format, hash, base64 encode and trim '='
keytool -exportcert \ 
-alias <alias-of-entry> \ 
-keystore <path-to-apk-signing-keystore> &>2 /dev/null | \ 
openssl sha1 -binary | \ 
openssl base64 | \ 
sed 's/=//g'

The Base64 encoding is the the "Base 64 Encoding" from Section 4 in [RFC4648], with padding characters removed.

NOTE

Users may also register multiple keys on a single authenticator for an AppID, such as for cases where they have multiple accounts. Such
registrations may have a Relying Party assigned username or local nicknames associated to allow them to be distinguished by the user,
or they may not (e.g. for 2nd factor use cases, the user account associated with a key may be communicated out-of-band to what is
specified by FIDO protocols). All registrations that share an AppID, also share these same audience restriction.

3.2 Processing Rules for AppID Assertions

Users may also register multiple keys on a single authenticator for an AppID, such as for cases where they have multiple accounts. Such
registrations may have a Relying Party assigned username or local nicknames associated to allow them to be distinguished by the user,
or they may not (e.g. for 2nd factor use cases, the user account associated with a key may be communicated out-of-band to what is
specified by FIDO protocols). All registrations that share an AppID, also share these same audience restriction.

NOTE

Users may also register multiple keys on a single authenticator for an AppID, such as for cases where they have multiple accounts. Such
registrations may have a Relying Party assigned username or local nicknames associated to allow them to be distinguished by the user,
or they may not (e.g. for 2nd factor use cases, the user account associated with a key may be communicated out-of-band to what is
specified by FIDO protocols). All registrations that share an AppID, also share these same audience restriction.

3.3 Processing Rules for FacetID Assertions

NOTE

Users may also register multiple keys on a single authenticator for an AppID, such as for cases where they have multiple accounts. Such
registrations may have a Relying Party assigned username or local nicknames associated to allow them to be distinguished by the user,
or they may not (e.g. for 2nd factor use cases, the user account associated with a key may be communicated out-of-band to what is
specified by FIDO protocols). All registrations that share an AppID, also share these same audience restriction.
### 3.1.2 Determining if a Caller's FacetID is Authorized for an AppID

1. If the AppID is not an HTTPS URL, and matches the FacetID of the caller, no additional processing is necessary and the operation may proceed.
2. If the AppID is null or empty, the client **must** set the AppID to be the FacetID of the caller, and the operation may proceed without additional processing.
3. If the caller's FacetID is an HTTPS Origin sharing the same host as the AppID, (e.g. if an application hosted at https://fido.example.com/myApp) and set an AppID of https://fido.example.com/myApp, no additional processing is necessary and the operation may proceed. This algorithm may be continued asynchronously for purposes of caching the TrustedFacetList, if desired.
4. Begin to fetch the TrustedFacetList using the HTTP GET method. The location **must** be identified with an HTTPS URL.
5. The URL **must** be dereferenced with an anonymous fetch. That is, the HTTP GET **must** include no cookies, authentication, Origin or Referer headers, and present no TLS certificates or other forms of credentials.
6. The response **must** set a MIME Content-Type of "application/fido.trusted-apps+json".
7. The caching related HTTP header fields in the HTTP response (e.g. "Expires") **should** be respected when fetching a TrustedFacetList.
8. The server hosting the TrustedFacetList **must** respond uniformly to all clients. That is, it **must not** vary the contents of the response body based on any credential material, including ambient authority such as originating IP address, supplied with the request.
9. If the server returns an HTTP redirect (status code 3xx) the server **must** also send the HTTP header FIDO-AppID-Redirect-Authorized: true and the client **must** verify the presence of such a header before following the redirect. This protects against abuse of open redirectors within the target domain by unauthorized parties. If this check has passed, restart this algorithm from step 4.
10. A TrustedFacetList may contain an unlimited number of entries, but clients **may** truncate or decline to process large responses.
11. From among the objects in the trustedFacet array, select the one with the version matching that of the protocol message version. With "matching" we mean: the highest version that appears in the TrustedFacetList that is smaller or equal to the actual protocol version being used.
12. The scheme of URLs in ids **must** identify either an application identity (e.g. using the apk, ios: or similar scheme) or an https: Web Origin [RFC6454].
13. Entries in ids using the https:// scheme **must** contain only scheme, host and port components, with an optional trailing /. Any path, query string, username/password, or fragment information **must** be discarded.
14. All Web Origins listed **must** have host names under the scope of the same least-specific private label in the DNS, using the following algorithm:
   1. Obtain the list of public DNS suffixes from https://publicsuffix.org/list/effective_tld_names.dat (the client **may** cache such data), or equivalent functionality as available on the platform.
   2. Extract the host portion of the original AppID URL, before following any redirects.
   3. The least-specific private label is the portion of the host portion of the AppID URL that matches a most-specific public suffix plus one additional label to the left (also known as "effective top-level domain+1" or eTLD+1). 
   4. For each Web Origin in the TrustedFacetList, the calculation of the least-specific private label in the DNS **must** be a case-insensitive match of that of the AppID URL itself. Entries that do not match **must** be discarded.
15. If the TrustedFacetList cannot be retrieved and successfully parsed according to these rules, the client **must** abort processing of the requested FIDO operation.
16. After processing the trustedFacets entry of the correct version and removing any invalid entries, if the caller's FacetID matches one listed in ids, the operation is allowed.

### 3.1.3 TrustedFacet List and Structure

The Trusted Facets JSON resource is a serialized TrustedFacetList hosted at the AppID URL. It consists of a dictionary containing a single member, trustedFacets which is an array of TrustedFacets dictionaries.

```webidl
dictionary TrustedFacetList {
  required TrustedFacets[] trustedFacets;
}
```

#### 3.1.3.1 Dictionary TrustedFacetList Members

- `trustedFacets` of type array of required TrustedFacets
  An array of TrustedFacets.

```webidl
dictionary TrustedFacets {
  required Version version;
  required DOMString[] ids;
}
```

#### 3.1.3.2 Dictionary TrustedFacets Members

- `version` of type required Version
  The protocol version to which this set of trusted facets applies. See [UAFProtocol] for the definition of the version structure.
- `ids` of type array of required DOMString
  An array of URLs identifying authorized facets for this AppID.

### 3.1.4 AppID Example 1

".com" is a public suffix. "https://www.example.com/appID" is provided as an AppID. The body of the resource at this location contains:

```json
{
  "trustedFacets": [{
    "version": { "major": 1, "minor": 0 },
    "ids": [
```
For this policy, "https://www.example.com" and "https://register.example.com" would have access to the keys registered for this AppID, and "https://user1.example.com" would not.

3.1.5 AppID Example 2

"hosting.example.com" is a public suffix, operated under "example.com" and used to provide hosted cloud services for many companies. "https://companyA.hosting.example.com/appID" is provided as an AppID. The body of the resource at this location contains:

```json
EXAMPLE 4
{
  "trustedFacets": [{
    "version": { "major": 1, "minor": 0 },
    "ids": [
      "https://register.example.com", // DISCARD, does not share "companyA.hosting.example.com" label
      "https://fido.companyA.hosting.example.com", // VALID, shares "companyA.hosting.example.com" label
      "https://xyz.companyA.hosting.example.com", // VALID, shares "companyA.hosting.example.com" label
      "https://companyB.hosting.example.com" // DISCARD, "companyB.hosting.example.com" does not match
    ]
  }
}
```

For this policy, "https://fido.companyA.hosting.example.com" would have access to the keys registered for this AppID, and "https://register.example.com" and "https://companyB.hosting.example.com" would not as a public-suffix exists between these DNS names and the AppID's.

3.1.6 Obtaining FacetID of Android Native App

This section is non-normative.

The following code demonstrates how a FIDO Client can obtain and construct the FacetID of a calling Android native application.

```java
EXAMPLE 5: AndroidFacetID SHA256
private String getFacetID(Context aContext, int callingUid) {
    String packageNames[] = aContext.getPackageManager().getPackagesForUid(callingUid);
    if (packageNames == null) {
        return null;
    }
    try {
        PackageInfo info = aContext.getPackageManager().getPackageInfo(packageNames[0], PackageManager.GET_SIGNATURES);
        byte[] cert = info.signedApk.toByteArray();
        InputStream input = new ByteArrayInputStream(cert);
        CertificateFactory cf = CertificateFactory.getInstance("X509");
        X509Certificate c = (X509Certificate) cf.generateCertificate(input);
        MessageDigest md = MessageDigest.getInstance("SHA256");
        return "android:apk-key-hash-sha256:" + Base64.encodeToString(md.digest(c.getEncoded()), Base64.DEFAULT | Base64.NO_WRAP | Base64.NO_PADDING);
    } catch (PackageManager.NameNotFoundException e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (CertificateException e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
    } catch (CertificateEncodingException e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
    return null;
}
```

```java
EXAMPLE 6: AndroidFacetID SHA1
private String getFacetID(Context aContext, int callingUid) {
    String packageNames[] = aContext.getPackageManager().getPackagesForUid(callingUid);
    if (packageNames == null) {
        return null;
    }
    try {
        PackageInfo info = aContext.getPackageManager().getPackageInfo(packageNames[0], PackageManager.GET_SIGNATURES);
        byte[] cert = info.signedApk.toByteArray();
        InputStream input = new ByteArrayInputStream(cert);
        CertificateFactory cf = CertificateFactory.getInstance("X509");
        X509Certificate c = (X509Certificate) cf.generateCertificate(input);
        MessageDigest md = MessageDigest.getInstance("SHA1");
        return "android:apk-key-hash:" + Base64.encodeToString(md.digest(c.getEncoded()), Base64.DEFAULT | Base64.NO_WRAP | Base64.NO_PADDING);
    }
```
3.1.7 Additional Security Considerations

The UAF protocol supports passing FacetID to the FIDO Server and including the FacetID in the computation of the authentication response.

Trusting a web origin facet implicitly trusts all subdomains under the named entity because web user agents do not provide a security barrier between such origins. So, in AppID Example 1, although not explicitly listed, "https://foobar.register.example.com" would still have effective access to credentials registered for the AppID "https://www.example.com/appID" because it can effectively act as "https://register.example.com".

The component implementing the controls described here must reliably identify callers to securely enforce the mechanisms. Platform inter-process communication mechanisms which allow such identification should be used when available.

It is unlikely that the component implementing the controls described here can verify the integrity and intent of the entries on a TrustedFacetList. If a trusted facet can be compromised or enlisted as a confused deputy [FIDO glossary] by a malicious party, it may be possible to trick a user into completing an authentication ceremony under the control of that malicious party.

3.1.7.1 Wildcards in TrustedFacet identifiers

This section is non-normative.

Wildcards are not supported in TrustedFacet identifiers. This follows the advice of RFC6125 [RFC6125], section 7.2.

FacetIDs are URLs that uniquely identify specific security principals that are trusted to interact with a given registered credential. Wildcards introduce undesirable ambiguity in the definition of the principal, as there is no consensus syntax for what wildcards mean, how they are expanded and where they can occur across different applications and protocols in common use. For schemes indicating application identities, it is not clear that wildcarding is appropriate in any fashion. For Web Origins, it broadly increases the scope of the credential to potentially include rogue or buggy hosts.

Taken together, these ambiguities might introduce exploitable differences in identity checking behavior among client implementations and would necessitate overly complex and inefficient identity checking algorithms.

A. References

A.1 Normative references

[FIDOGlossary]
R. Lindemann; D. Baghdasaryan; B. Hill; J. Hodges. FIDO Technical Glossary. Implementation Draft. URL: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-id-20180227/fido-glossary-v2.0-id-20180227.html

[RFC2119]

[RFC4648]

[RFC6125]

[RFC6454]

[UAFProtocol]

A.2 Informative references

[ANDROID]
The Android™ Operating System. URL: http://developer.android.com/

[APK-Signing]

[BUNDLEID]

[UAFArchOverview]

[iOS]
iOS Dev Center. URL: https://developer.apple.com/devcenter/ios/index.action
FIDO Metadata Statements

FIDO Alliance Implementation Draft 27 February 2018

This version: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-id-20180227/fido-metadata-statement-v2.0-id-20180227.html
Previous version: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-ps-20170927/fido-metadata-statement-v2.0-ps-20170927.html

Editors: Rolf Lindemann, Nok Nok Labs, Inc.
John Kemp, FIDO Alliance

Contributors: Brad Hill, PayPal, Inc.
Davit Baghdasaryan, Nok Nok Labs, Inc.

Copyright © 2013-2018 FIDO Alliance All Rights Reserved.

Abstract

FIDO authenticators may have many different form factors, characteristics and capabilities. This document defines a standard means to describe the relevant pieces of information about an authenticator in order to interoperate with it, or to make risk-based policy decisions about transactions involving a particular authenticator.

Status of This Document

This section describes the status of this document at the time of its publication. Other documents may supersede this document. A list of current FIDO Alliance publications and the latest revision of this technical report can be found in the FIDO Alliance specifications index at https://www.fidoalliance.org/specifications/.

This document was published by the FIDO Alliance as a Implementation Draft. This document is intended to become a FIDO Alliance Proposed Standard. If you wish to make comments regarding this document, please Contact Us. All comments are welcome.

This Implementation Draft Specification has been prepared by FIDO Alliance, Inc. Permission is hereby granted to use the Specification solely for the purpose of implementing the Specification. No rights are granted to prepare derivative works of this Specification. Entities seeking permission to reproduce portions of this Specification for other uses must contact the FIDO Alliance to determine whether an appropriate license for such use is available.

Implementation of certain elements of this Specification may require licenses under third party intellectual property rights, including without limitation, patent rights. The FIDO Alliance, Inc. and its Members and any other contributors to the Specification are not, and shall not be held, responsible in any manner for identifying or failing to identify any or all such third party intellectual property rights.

THIS FIDO ALLIANCE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Table of Contents

- 1. Notation
  - 1.1 Conformance
- 2. Overview
  - 2.1 Scope
  - 2.2 Audience
  - 2.3 Architecture
3. Types
   3.1 Authenticator Attestation GUID (AAGUID) typedef
   3.2 CodeAccuracyDescriptor dictionary
      ■ 3.2.1 Dictionary CodeAccuracyDescriptor Members
   3.3 BiometricAccuracyDescriptor dictionary
      ■ 3.3.1 Dictionary BiometricAccuracyDescriptor Members
   3.4 PatternAccuracyDescriptor dictionary
      ■ 3.4.1 Dictionary PatternAccuracyDescriptor Members
   3.5 VerificationMethodDescriptor dictionary
      ■ 3.5.1 Dictionary VerificationMethodDescriptor Members
   3.6 verificationMethodANDCombinations typedef
   3.7 rgbPaletteEntry dictionary
      ■ 3.7.1 Dictionary rgbPaletteEntry Members
   3.8 DisplayPNGCharacteristicsDescriptor dictionary
      ■ 3.8.1 Dictionary DisplayPNGCharacteristicsDescriptor Members
   3.9 EcdaaTrustAnchor dictionary
      ■ 3.9.1 Dictionary EcdaaTrustAnchor Members
   3.10 ExtensionDescriptor dictionary
      ■ 3.10.1 Dictionary ExtensionDescriptor Members
   3.11 AlternativeDescriptions dictionary
      ■ 3.11.1 Dictionary AlternativeDescriptions Members

4. Metadata Keys
   4.1 Dictionary MetadataStatement Members

5. Metadata Statement Format
   5.1 UAF Example
   5.2 U2F Example
   5.3 FIDO2 Example

6. Additional Considerations
   6.1 Field updates and metadata

A. References
   A.1 Normative references
   A.2 Informative references

1. Notation

Type names, attribute names and element names are written as code.

String literals are enclosed in "", e.g. "UAF-TLV".

In formulas we use "|" to denote byte wise concatenation operations.

DOM APIs are described using the ECMAScript [ECMA-262] bindings for WebIDL [WebIDL-ED].

Following [WebIDL-ED], dictionary members are optional unless they are explicitly marked as required.

WebIDL dictionary members must not have a value of null.

Unless otherwise specified, if a WebIDL dictionary member is DOMString, it must not be empty.

Unless otherwise specified, if a WebIDL dictionary member is a List, it must not be an empty list.

All diagrams, examples, notes in this specification are non-normative.

NOTE

Note: Certain dictionary members need to be present in order to comply with FIDO requirements. Such members
are marked in the WebIDL definitions found in this document, as required. The keyword required has been
introduced by [WebIDL-ED], which is a work-in-progress. If you are using a WebIDL parser which implements
[WebIDL], then you may remove the keyword required from your WebIDL and use other means to ensure those
fields are present.

1.1 Conformance

As well as sections marked as non-normative, all authoring guidelines, diagrams, examples, and notes in this specification
are non-normative. Everything else in this specification is normative.

The key words must, must not, required, should, should not, recommended, may, and optional in this specification are to be
interpreted as described in [RFC2119].
2. Overview

This section is non-normative.

The FIDO family of protocols enable simpler and more secure online authentication utilizing a wide variety of different devices in a competitive marketplace. Much of the complexity behind this variety is hidden from Relying Party applications, but in order to accomplish the goals of FIDO, Relying Parties must have some means of discovering and verifying various characteristics of authenticators. Relying Parties can learn a subset of verifiable information for authenticators certified by the FIDO Alliance with an Authenticator Metadata statement. The URL to access that Metadata statement is provided by the Metadata TOC file accessible through the Metadata Service [FIDOMetadataService].

For definitions of terms, please refer to the FIDO Glossary [FIDOGlossary].

2.1 Scope

This document describes the format of and information contained in Authenticator Metadata statements. For a definitive list of possible values for the various types of information, refer to the FIDO Registry of Predefined Values [FIDORegistry].

The description of the processes and methods by which authenticator metadata statements are distributed and the methods how these statements can be verified are described in the Metadata Service Specification [FIDOMetadataService].

2.2 Audience

The intended audience for this document includes:

- FIDO authenticator vendors who wish to produce metadata statements for their products.
- FIDO server implementers who need to consume metadata statements to verify characteristics of authenticators and attestation statements, make proper algorithm choices for protocol messages, create policy statements or tailor various other modes of operation to authenticator-specific characteristics.
- FIDO relying parties who wish to
  - create custom policy statements about which authenticators they will accept
  - risk score authenticators based on their characteristics
  - verify attested authenticator IDs for cross-referencing with third party metadata

2.3 Architecture
Authenticator metadata statements are used directly by the FIDO server at a relying party, but the information contained in the authoritative statement is used in several other places. How a server obtains these metadata statements is described in [FIDOMetadataService].

The workflow around an authenticator metadata statement is as follows:

1. The authenticator vendor produces a metadata statement, that is UTF-8 encoded, describing the characteristics of an authenticator.
2. The metadata statement is submitted to the FIDO Alliance as part of the FIDO certification process. The FIDO Alliance distributes the metadata as described in [FIDOMetadataService].
3. A FIDO relying party configures its registration policy to allow authenticators matching certain characteristics to be registered.
4. The FIDO server sends a registration challenge message. This message can contain such policy statement.
5. Depending on the FIDO protocol being used, either the relying party application or the FIDO UAF Client receives the policy statement as part of the challenge message and processes it. It queries available authenticators for their self-reported characteristics and (with the user's input) selects an authenticator that matches the policy, to be registered.
6. The client processes and sends a registration response message to the server. This message contains a reference to the authenticator model and, optionally, a signature made with the private key corresponding to the public key in the authenticator's attestation certificate.
7. The FIDO Server looks up the metadata statement for the particular authenticator model. If the metadata statement lists an attestation certificate(s), it verifies that an attestation signature is present, and made with the private key corresponding to either (a) one of the certificates listed in this metadata statement or (b) corresponding to the public key in a certificate that chains to one of the issuer certificates listed in the authenticator's metadata statement.
8. The FIDO Server next verifies that the authenticator meets the originally supplied registration policy based on its authoritative metadata statement. This prevents the registration of unexpected authenticator models.
9. Optionally, a FIDO Server may, with input from the Relying Party, assign a risk or trust score to the authenticator, based on its metadata, including elements not selected for by the stated policy.
10. Optionally, a FIDO Server may cross-reference the attested authenticator model with other metadata databases published by third parties. Such third-party metadata might, for example, inform the FIDO Server if an authenticator has achieved certifications relevant to certain markets or industry verticals, or whether it meets application-specific regulatory requirements.

3. Types

*This section is normative.*
3.1 Authenticator Attestation GUID (AAGUID) typedef

```webidl
typeddef DOMString AAGUID;
```

Some authenticators have an AAGUID, which is a 128-bit identifier that indicates the type (e.g. make and model) of the authenticator. The AAGUID must be chosen by the manufacturer to be identical across all substantially identical authenticators made by that manufacturer, and different (with probability $1 - 2^{-128}$ or greater) from the AAGUIDs of all other types of authenticators.

The AAGUID is represented as a string (e.g. "7a98c250-6808-11cf-b73b-00aa00b677a7") consisting of 5 hex strings separated by a dash ("-"), see [RFC4122].

3.2 CodeAccuracyDescriptor dictionary

The `CodeAccuracyDescriptor` describes the relevant accuracy/complexity aspects of passcode user verification methods.

```webidl
dictionary CodeAccuracyDescriptor {
  required unsigned short base;
  required unsigned short minLength;
  unsigned short maxRetries;
  unsigned short blockSlowdown;
};
```

3.2.1 Dictionary `CodeAccuracyDescriptor` Members

- **base** of type `required unsigned short`
  The numeric system base (radix) of the code, e.g. 10 in the case of decimal digits.

- **minLength** of type `required unsigned short`
  The minimum number of digits of the given base required for that code, e.g. 4 in the case of 4 digits.

- **maxRetries** of type `unsigned short`
  Maximum number of false attempts before the authenticator will block this method (at least for some time). 0 means it will never block.

- **blockSlowdown** of type `unsigned short`
  Enforced minimum number of seconds wait time after blocking (e.g. due to forced reboot or similar). 0 means this user verification method will be blocked, either permanently or until an alternative user verification method method succeeded. All alternative user verification methods must be specified appropriately in the Metadata in `userVerificationDetails`.

3.3 BiometricAccuracyDescriptor dictionary

The `BiometricAccuracyDescriptor` describes relevant accuracy/complexity aspects in the case of a biometric user verification method.

- **NOTE**
  One example of such a method is the use of 4 digit PIN codes for mobile phone SIM card unlock.

  We are using the numeral system `base` (radix) and `minLen`, instead of the number of potential combinations since there is sufficient evidence [iPhonePasscodes] [MoreTopWorstPasswords] that users don’t select their code evenly distributed at random. So software might take into account the various probability distributions for different bases. This essentially means that in practice, passcodes are not as secure as they could be if randomly chosen.

- **NOTE**
  The False Acceptance Rate (FAR) and False Rejection Rate (FRR) values typically are interdependent via the Receiver Operator Characteristic (ROC) curve.

  The False Artefact Acceptance Rate (FAAR) value reflects the capability of detecting presentation attacks, such as the detection of rubber finger presentation.

  The FAR, FRR, and FAAR values given here must reflect the actual configuration of the authenticators (as opposed to being theoretical best case values).

At least one of the values must be set. If the vendor doesn’t want to specify such values, then `VerificationMethodDescriptor.baDesc` must be omitted.
3.3.1 Dictionary BiometricAccuracyDescriptor Members

**FAR** of type `double`
The false acceptance rate [ISO19795-1] for a single reference data set, i.e. the percentage of non-matching data sets that are accepted as valid ones. For example a FAR of 0.002% would be encoded as 0.00002.

**NOTE**
The false acceptance rate is relevant for the security. Lower false acceptance rates mean better security. Only the live captured subjects are covered by this value - not the presentation of artefacts.

**FRR** of type `double`
The false rejection rate for a single reference data set, i.e. the percentage of presented valid data sets that lead to a (false) non-acceptance. For example a FRR of 10% would be encoded as 0.1.

**NOTE**
The false rejection rate is relevant for the convenience. Lower false acceptance rates mean better convenience.

**EER** of type `double`
The equal error rate for a single reference data set.

**FAAR** of type `double`
The false artefact acceptance rate [ISO30107-1], i.e. the percentage of artefacts that are incorrectly accepted by the system. For example a FAAR of 0.1% would be encoded as 0.001.

**NOTE**
The false artefact acceptance rate is relevant for the security of the system. Lower false artefact acceptance rates imply better security.

**maxReferenceDataSets** of type `unsigned short`
Maximum number of alternative reference data sets, e.g. 3 if the user is allowed to enroll 3 different fingers to a fingerprint based authenticator.

**maxRetries** of type `unsigned short`
Maximum number of false attempts before the authenticator will block this method (at least for some time). 0 means it will never block.

**blockSlowdown** of type `unsigned short`
Enforced minimum number of seconds wait time after blocking (e.g. due to forced reboot or similar). 0 means that this user verification method will be blocked either permanently or until an alternative user verification method succeeded. All alternative user verification methods must be specified appropriately in the metadata in `userVerificationDetails`.

3.4 PatternAccuracyDescriptor dictionary

The `PatternAccuracyDescriptor` describes relevant accuracy/complexity aspects in the case that a pattern is used as the user verification method.
NOTE

One example of such a pattern is the 3x3 dot matrix as used in Android [AndroidUnlockPattern] screen unlock. The minComplexity would be 1624 in that case, based on the user choosing a 4-digit PIN, the minimum allowed for this mechanism.

WebIDL
dictionary PatternAccuracyDescriptor {
    required unsigned long minComplexity;
    unsigned short maxRetries;
    unsigned short blockSlowdown;
};

3.4.1 Dictionary PatternAccuracyDescriptor Members

minComplexity of type required unsigned long
Number of possible patterns (having the minimum length) out of which exactly one would be the right one, i.e. 1/probability in the case of equal distribution.

maxRetries of type unsigned short
Maximum number of false attempts before the authenticator will block authentication using this method (at least temporarily). 0 means it will never block.

blockSlowdown of type unsigned short
Enforced minimum number of seconds wait time after blocking (due to forced reboot or similar mechanism). 0 means this user verification method will be blocked, either permanently or until an alternative user verification method succeeds. All alternative user verification methods must be specified appropriately in the metadata under userVerificationDetails.

3.5 VerificationMethodDescriptor dictionary

A descriptor for a specific base user verification method as implemented by the authenticator.

A base user verification method must be chosen from the list of those described in [FIDORegistry]. The specification of the related AccuracyDescriptor is optional, but recommended.

WebIDL
dictionary VerificationMethodDescriptor {
    required unsigned long userVerification;
    CodeAccuracyDescriptor caDesc;
    BiometricAccuracyDescriptor baDesc;
    PatternAccuracyDescriptor paDesc;
};

3.5.1 Dictionary VerificationMethodDescriptor Members

userVerification of type required unsigned long
A single USER_VERIFY constant (see [FIDORegistry]), not a bit flag combination. This value must be non-zero.

caDesc of type CodeAccuracyDescriptor
May optionally be used in the case of method USER_VERIFY_PASSCODE.

baDesc of type BiometricAccuracyDescriptor
May optionally be used in the case of method USER_VERIFY_FINGERPRINT, USER_VERIFY_VOICEPRINT, USER_VERIFY_FACEPRINT, or USER_VERIFY_EYEPRINT.

paDesc of type PatternAccuracyDescriptor
May optionally be used in case of method USER_VERIFY_PATTERN.

3.6 verificationMethodANDCombinations typedef

typedef VerificationMethodDescriptor[] VerificationMethodANDCombinations;

VerificationMethodANDCombinations must be non-empty. It is a list containing the base user verification methods which
must be passed as part of a successful user verification.

This list will contain only a single entry if using a single user verification method is sufficient.

If this list contains multiple entries, then all of the listed user verification methods must be passed as part of the user verification process.

3.7 rgbPaletteEntry dictionary

The rgbPaletteEntry is an RGB three-sample tuple palette entry

```webidl
dictionary rgbPaletteEntry {
    required unsigned short r;
    required unsigned short g;
    required unsigned short b;
};
```

### 3.7.1 Dictionary rgbPaletteEntry Members

- `r` of type required unsigned short
  - Red channel sample value

- `g` of type required unsigned short
  - Green channel sample value

- `b` of type required unsigned short
  - Blue channel sample value

3.8 DisplayPNGCharacteristicsDescriptor dictionary

The DisplayPNGCharacteristicsDescriptor describes a PNG image characteristics as defined in the PNG [PNG] spec for IHDR (image header) and PLTE (palette table)

```webidl
dictionary DisplayPNGCharacteristicsDescriptor {
    required unsigned long width;
    required unsigned long height;
    required octet bitDepth;
    required octet colorType;
    required octet compression;
    required octet filter;
    required octet interlace;
    rgbPaletteEntry[] plte;
};
```

### 3.8.1 Dictionary DisplayPNGCharacteristicsDescriptor Members

- `width` of type required unsigned long
  - Image width

- `height` of type required unsigned long
  - Image height

- `bitDepth` of type required octet
  - Bit depth - bits per sample or per palette index.

- `colorType` of type required octet
  - Color type defines the PNG image type.

- `compression` of type required octet
  - Compression method used to compress the image data.

- `filter` of type required octet
  - Filter method is the preprocessing method applied to the image data before compression.

- `interlace` of type required octet
  - Interlace method is the transmission order of the image data.

- `plte` of type array of rgbPaletteEntry
  - 1 to 256 palette entries

3.9 EcdaaTrustAnchor dictionary

In the case of ECDAA attestation, the ECDAA-Issuer's trust anchor must be specified in this field.
dictionary `EcdaaTrustAnchor` {
    required DOMString `X`;
    required DOMString `Y`;
    required DOMString `c`;
    required DOMString `sx`;
    required DOMString `sy`;
    required DOMString `G1Curve`;
};

3.9.1 Dictionary `EcdaaTrustAnchor` Members

`X` of type required DOMString

base64url encoding of the result of `ECPoint2ToB` of the `ECPoint2X = P_X`. See [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm] for the definition of `ECPoint2ToB`.

`Y` of type required DOMString

base64url encoding of the result of `ECPoint2ToB` of the `ECPoint2Y = P_Y`. See [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm] for the definition of `ECPoint2ToB`.

`c` of type required DOMString

base64url encoding of the result of `BigNumberToB(c)`. See section "Issuer Specific ECDAA Parameters" in [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm] for an explanation of c. See [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm] for the definition of `BigNumberToB`.

`sx` of type required DOMString

base64url encoding of the result of `BigNumberToB(sx)`. See section "Issuer Specific ECDAA Parameters" in [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm] for an explanation of sx. See [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm] for the definition of `BigNumberToB`.

`sy` of type required DOMString

base64url encoding of the result of `BigNumberToB(sy)`. See section "Issuer Specific ECDAA Parameters" in [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm] for an explanation of sy. See [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm] for the definition of `BigNumberToB`.

`G1Curve` of type required DOMString


**NOTE**

Whenever a party uses this trust anchor for the first time, it must first verify that it was correctly generated by verifying s, sx, sy. See [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm] for details.

3.10 ExtensionDescriptor dictionary

This descriptor contains an extension supported by the authenticator.

WebIDL

dictionary `ExtensionDescriptor` {
    required DOMString `id`;
    unsigned short `tag`;
    DOMString `data`;
    required boolean `fail_if_unknown`;
};

3.10.1 Dictionary `ExtensionDescriptor` Members

`id` of type required DOMString

Identifies the extension.

`tag` of type unsigned short

The TAG of the extension if this was assigned. TAGs are assigned to extensions if they could appear in an assertion.

`data` of type DOMString

Contains arbitrary data further describing the extension and/or data needed to correctly process the extension.

This field may be missing or it may be empty.

`fail_if_unknown` of type required boolean

Indicates whether unknown extensions must be ignored (false) or must lead to an error (true) when the extension is to be processed by the FIDO Server, FIDO Client, ASM, or FIDO Authenticator.
A value of `false` indicates that unknown extensions must be ignored. A value of `true` indicates that unknown extensions must result in an error.

3.11 AlternativeDescriptions dictionary

This descriptor contains description in alternative languages.

```webidl
dictionary AlternativeDescriptions {
  DOMString *IETFLanguageCodes-members...;
};
```

3.11.1 Dictionary AlternativeDescriptions Members

*IETFLanguageCodes-members...* of type `DOMString`

IETF language codes ([RFC5646]), defined by a primary language subtag, followed by a region subtag based on a two-letter country code from [ISO3166] alpha-2 (usually written in upper case), e.g. Austrian-German - "de-AT". In case of absence of the specific territorial language definition, vendor should fallback to the more general language option, e.g. If "de" is given, but "de-AT" is missing, the use "de" entry instead.

Description values can contain any UTF-8 characters.

For example:
```
{ "ru-RU": "Пример U2F аутентификатора от FIDO Alliance",
  "fr-FR": "Exemple U2F authenticator de FIDO Alliance" }
```

Each description shall not exceed a maximum length of 200 characters.

4. Metadata Keys

*This section is normative.*

```webidl
dictionary MetadataStatement {
  DOMString legalHeader;
  AAID aaid;
  AAGUID aaguid;
  required DOMString[] attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers;
  DOMString alternativeDescriptions;
  required DOMString[] assertionScheme;
  required unsigned short authenticationAlgorithm;
  required unsigned short publicKeyAlgAndEncoding;
  required unsigned short[] attestationTypes;
  required VerificationMethodANDCombinations[] userVerificationDetails;
  required unsigned short keyProtection;
  boolean isKeyRestricted;
  boolean isFreshUserVerificationRequired;
  required unsigned short matcherProtection;
  required unsigned short cryptoStrength;
  required long attachmentHint;
  required boolean isSecondFactorOnly;
  required DOMString toDisplay;
  required DOMString toDisplayPNGCharacteristics;
  required DOMString ecdaaTrustAnchor;
  DOMString icon;
  ExtensionDescriptor[] supportedExtensions[];
};
```

4.1 Dictionary MetadataStatement Members

`legalHeader` of type `DOMString`

The `legalHeader`, if present, contains a legal guide for accessing and using metadata, which itself may contain URL(s) pointing to further information, such as a full Terms and Conditions statement.

`aaid` of type `AAID`

The Authenticator Attestation ID. See [UAFProtocol] for the definition of the AAID structure. This field must be set if the authenticator implements FIDO UAF.

---

NOTE
FIDO UAF Authenticators support AAID, but they don't support AAGUID.

**aaguid** of type `AAGUID`

The Authenticator Attestation GUID. See [FIDOKeyAttestation] for the definition of the AAGUID structure. This field must be set if the authenticator implements FIDO 2.

NOTE

FIDO 2 Authenticators support AAGUID, but they don't support AAID.

**attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers** of type array of `DOMString`

A list of the attestation certificate public key identifiers encoded as hex string. This value must be calculated according to method 1 for computing the keyIdentifier as defined in [RFC5280] section 4.2.1.2. The hex string must not contain any non-hex characters (e.g. spaces). All hex letters must be lower case. This field must be set if neither aaid nor aaguid are set. Setting this field implies that the attestation certificate(s) are dedicated to a single authenticator model.

All attestationCertificateKeyIdentifier values should be unique within the scope of the Metadata Service.

NOTE

FIDO U2F Authenticators typically do not support AAID nor AAGUID, but they use attestation certificates dedicated to a single authenticator model.

**description** of type `required DOMString`

A human-readable, short description of the authenticator, in English.

NOTE

This description must be in English, and only contain ASCII [ECMA-262] characters. This description shall not exceed a maximum length of 200 characters.

**alternativeDescriptions** of type `AlternativeDescriptions`

A list of human-readable short descriptions of the authenticator in different languages.

**authenticatorVersion** of type `required unsigned short`

Earliest (i.e. lowest) trustworthy `authenticatorVersion` meeting the requirements specified in this metadata statement.

Adding new `StatusReport` entries with status `UPDATE_AVAILABLE` to the metadata TOC object [FIDOMetadataService] must also change this `authenticatorVersion` if the update fixes severe security issues, e.g. the ones reported by preceding `StatusReport` entries with status code `USER_VERIFICATION_BYPASS`, `ATTENTION_KEY_COMPROMISE`, `USER_KEY_REMOTE_COMPROMISE`, `USER_KEY_PHYSICAL_COMPROMISE`, `REVOKED`.

It is recommended to assume increased risk if this version is higher (newer) than the firmware version present in an authenticator. For example, if a `StatusReport` entry with status `USER_VERIFICATION_BYPASS` or `USER_KEY_REMOTE_COMPROMISE` precedes the `UPDATE_AVAILABLE` entry, than any firmware version lower (older) than the one specified in the metadata statement is assumed to be vulnerable.

**protocolFamily** of type `DOMString`

The FIDO protocol family. The values "uaf", "u2f", and "fido2" are supported. If this field is missing, the assumed protocol family is "uaf". Metadata Statements for U2F authenticators must set the value of protocolFamily to "u2f" and FIDO 2.0/WebAuthentication Authenticator implementations must set the value of protocolFamily to "fido2".

**upv** of type array of `required Version`

The FIDO unified protocol version(s) (related to the specific protocol family) supported by this authenticator. See [UAFProtocol] for the definition of the `Version` structure.

**assertionScheme** of type `required DOMString`

The assertion scheme supported by the authenticator. Must be set to one of the enumerated strings defined in the FIDO UAF Registry of Predefined Values [UAFRegistry], or to "U2FV1BIN" in the case of the U2F raw message format, or to "FIDOV2" in the case of the FIDO 2/WebAuthentication assertion scheme.

**authenticationAlgorithm** of type `required unsigned short`

The preferred authentication algorithm supported by the authenticator. Must be set to one of the ALG constants defined in the FIDO Registry of Predefined Values [FIDORegistry]. This value must be non-zero.

**authenticationAlgorithms** of type array of `unsigned short`

FIDO UAF Authenticators support AAID, but they don't support AAGUID.

**NOTE**

FIDO 2 Authenticators support AAGUID, but they don't support AAID.

**NOTE**

FIDO U2F Authenticators typically do not support AAID nor AAGUID, but they use attestation certificates dedicated to a single authenticator model.

**NOTE**

This description should help an administrator configuring authenticator policies. This description might deviate from the description returned by the ASM for that authenticator.

This description should contain the public authenticator trade name and the publicly known vendor name.

This description must be in English, and only contain ASCII [ECMA-262] characters. This description shall not exceed a maximum length of 200 characters.

**alternativeDescriptions** of type `AlternativeDescriptions`

A list of human-readable short descriptions of the authenticator in different languages.

**authenticatorVersion** of type `required unsigned short`

Earliest (i.e. lowest) trustworthy `authenticatorVersion` meeting the requirements specified in this metadata statement.

Adding new `StatusReport` entries with status `UPDATE_AVAILABLE` to the metadata TOC object [FIDOMetadataService] must also change this `authenticatorVersion` if the update fixes severe security issues, e.g. the ones reported by preceding `StatusReport` entries with status code `USER_VERIFICATION_BYPASS`, `ATTENTION_KEY_COMPROMISE`, `USER_KEY_REMOTE_COMPROMISE`, `USER_KEY_PHYSICAL_COMPROMISE`, `REVOKED`.

It is recommended to assume increased risk if this version is higher (newer) than the firmware version present in an authenticator. For example, if a `StatusReport` entry with status `USER_VERIFICATION_BYPASS` or `USER_KEY_REMOTE_COMPROMISE` precedes the `UPDATE_AVAILABLE` entry, than any firmware version lower (older) than the one specified in the metadata statement is assumed to be vulnerable.

**protocolFamily** of type `DOMString`

The FIDO protocol family. The values "uaf", "u2f", and "fido2" are supported. If this field is missing, the assumed protocol family is "uaf". Metadata Statements for U2F authenticators must set the value of protocolFamily to "u2f" and FIDO 2.0/WebAuthentication Authenticator implementations must set the value of protocolFamily to "fido2".

**upv** of type array of `required Version`

The FIDO unified protocol version(s) (related to the specific protocol family) supported by this authenticator. See [UAFProtocol] for the definition of the `Version` structure.

**assertionScheme** of type `required DOMString`

The assertion scheme supported by the authenticator. Must be set to one of the enumerated strings defined in the FIDO UAF Registry of Predefined Values [UAFRegistry], or to "U2FV1BIN" in the case of the U2F raw message format, or to "FIDOV2" in the case of the FIDO 2/WebAuthentication assertion scheme.

**authenticationAlgorithm** of type `required unsigned short`

The preferred authentication algorithm supported by the authenticator. Must be set to one of the ALG constants defined in the FIDO Registry of Predefined Values [FIDORegistry]. This value must be non-zero.

**authenticationAlgorithms** of type array of `unsigned short`
The list of authentication algorithms supported by the authenticator. Must be set to the complete list of the supported ALG constants defined in the FIDO Registry of Predefined Values [FIDORegistry] if the authenticator supports multiple algorithms. Each value must be non-zero.

**NOTE**

FIDO UAF Authenticators  
For verification purposes, the field SignatureAlgAndEncoding in the FIDO UAF authentication assertion [UAFAuthnrCommands] should be used to determine the actual signature algorithm and encoding.

FIDO U2F Authenticators  
FIDO U2F only supports one signature algorithm and encoding: ALG_SIGN_SECP256R1_ECDSA_SHA256_RAW [FIDORegistry].

**publicKeyAlgAndEncoding** of type required unsigned short  
The preferred public key format used by the authenticator during registration operations. Must be set to one of the ALG_KEY constants defined in the FIDO Registry of Predefined Values [FIDORegistry]. Because this information is not present in APIs related to authenticator discovery or policy, a FIDO server must be prepared to accept and process any and all key representations defined for any public key algorithm it supports. This value must be non-zero.

**publicKeyAlgAndEncodings** of type array of unsigned short  
The list of public key formats supported by the authenticator during registration operations. Must be set to the complete list of the supported ALG_KEY constants defined in the FIDO Registry of Predefined Values [FIDORegistry] if the authenticator model supports multiple encodings. Because this information is not present in APIs related to authenticator discovery or policy, a FIDO server must be prepared to accept and process any and all key representations defined for any public key algorithm it supports. Each value must be non-zero.

**NOTE**

FIDO UAF Authenticators  
For verification purposes, the field PublicKeyAlgAndEncoding in the FIDO UAF registration assertion [UAFAuthnrCommands] should be used to determine the actual encoding of the public key.

FIDO U2F Authenticators  
FIDO U2F only supports one public key encoding: ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_RAW [FIDORegistry].

**attestationTypes** of type array of required unsigned short  
The supported attestation type(s). (e.g. TAG_ATTESTATION_BASIC_FULL(0x3E07), TAG_ATTESTATION_BASIC_SUBROGATE(0x3E08)).  
See section 4.1 of FIDO UAF Registry [UAFAuthnrCommands], section 5.2.1 of FIDO UAF Authenticator Commands specification [UAFAuthnrCommands], and section 4.1.2 of FIDO UAF Protocol specification [UAFProtocol] for details.

**NOTE**

Even though these tags are defined in FIDO UAF protocol specifications, the attestation types apply to authenticators of all protocol families (e.g. UAF, U2F, ...).

**userVerificationDetails** of type array of required VerificationMethodANDCombinations  
A list of alternative VerificationMethodANDCombinations. Each of these entries is one alternative user verification method. Each of these alternative user verification methods might itself be an "AND" combination of multiple modalities.

All effectively available alternative user verification methods must be properly specified here. A user verification method is considered effectively available if this method can be used to either:

- enroll new verification reference data to one of the user verification methods
  or
- unlock the UAuth key directly after successful user verification

**keyProtection** of type required unsigned short  
A 16-bit number representing the bit fields defined by the KEY_PROTECTION constants in the FIDO Registry of Predefined Values [FIDORegistry].

This value must be non-zero.

**NOTE**

The keyProtection specified here denotes the effective security of the attestation key and Uauth private key and the effective trustworthiness of the attested attributes in the "sign assertion". Effective security
isKeyRestricted of type boolean

This entry is set to `true`, if the Uauth private key is restricted by the authenticator to only sign valid FIDO signature assertions.

This entry is set to `false`, if the authenticator doesn't restrict the Uauth key to only sign valid FIDO signature assertions. In this case, the calling application could potentially get any hash value signed by the authenticator.

If this field is missing, the assumed value is `isKeyRestricted=true`.

NOTE

Note that only in the case of `isKeyRestricted=true`, the FIDO server can trust a signature counter or transaction text to have been correctly processed/controlled by the authenticator.

isFreshUserVerificationRequired of type boolean

This entry is set to `true`, if Uauth key usage always requires a fresh user verification.

If this field is missing, the assumed value is `isFreshUserVerificationRequired=true`.

This entry is set to `false`, if the Uauth key can be used without requiring a fresh user verification, e.g. without any additional user interaction, if the user was verified a (potentially configurable) caching time ago.

In the case of `isFreshUserVerificationRequired=false`, the FIDO server must verify the registration response and/or authentication response and verify that the (maximum) caching time (sometimes also called "authTimeout") is acceptable.

This entry solely refers to the user verification. In the case of transaction confirmation, the authenticator must always ask the user to authorize the specific transaction.

NOTE

Note that in the case of `isFreshUserVerificationRequired=false`, the calling App could trigger use of the key without user involvement. In this case it is the responsibility of the App to ask for user consent.

matcherProtection of type required unsigned short

A 16-bit number representing the bit fields defined by the `MATCHER_PROTECTION` constants in the FIDO Registry of Predefined Values [FIDORegistry].

This value must be non-zero.

NOTE

If multiple matchers are implemented, then this value must reflect the weakest implementation of all matchers.

The matcherProtection specified here denotes the effective security of the FIDO authenticator’s user verification. This means that a false positive user verification implies breach of the stated method. For example, if matcherProtection=TEE is stated, it shall be impossible to trigger use of the Uauth private key when bypassing the user verification without breaking the TEE.

cryptoStrength of type unsigned short

The authenticator’s overall claimed cryptographic strength in bits (sometimes also called security strength or security level). This is the minimum of the cryptographic strength of all involved cryptographic methods (e.g. RNG, underlying hash, key wrapping algorithm, signing algorithm, attestation algorithm), e.g. see [FIPS180-4], [FIPS186-4], [FIPS198-1], [SP800-38B], [SP800-38C], [SP800-38D], [SP800-38F], [SP800-90C], [SP800-90ar1], [FIPS140-2] etc.

If this value is absent, the cryptographic strength is unknown. If the cryptographic strength of one of the involved cryptographic methods is unknown the overall claimed cryptographic strength is also unknown.

operatingEnv of type DOMString

Description of the particular operating environment that is used for the Authenticator. These are specified in [FIDORestrictedOperatingEnv].

attachmentHint of type required unsigned long
A 32-bit number representing the bit fields defined by the ATTACHMENT_HINT constants in the FIDO Registry of Predefined Values [FIDORegistry].

**NOTE**

The connection state and topology of an authenticator may be transient and cannot be relied on as authoritative by a relying party, but the metadata field should have all the bit flags set for the topologies possible for the authenticator. For example, an authenticator instantiated as a single-purpose hardware token that can communicate over bluetooth should set ATTACHMENT_HINT_EXTERNAL but not ATTACHMENT_HINT_INTERNAL.

**isSecondFactorOnly** of type required boolean
Indicates if the authenticator is designed to be used only as a second factor, i.e. requiring some other authentication method as a first factor (e.g. username+password).

**tcDisplay** of type required unsigned short
A 16-bit number representing a combination of the bit flags defined by the TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY constants in the FIDO Registry of Predefined Values [FIDORegistry].

This value **must** be 0, if transaction confirmation is not supported by the authenticator.

**NOTE**

The tcDisplay specified here denotes the effective security of the authenticator’s transaction confirmation display. This means that only a breach of the stated method allows an attacker to inject transaction text to be included in the signature assertion which hasn’t been displayed and confirmed by the user.

**tcDisplayContentType** of type DOMString
Supported MIME content type [RFC2049] for the transaction confirmation display, such as text/plain or image/png.

This value **must** be present if transaction confirmation is supported, i.e. tcDisplay is non-zero.

**tcDisplayPNGCharacteristics** of type array of DisplayPNGCharacteristicsDescriptor
A list of alternative DisplayPNGCharacteristicsDescriptor. Each of these entries is one alternative of supported image characteristics for displaying a PNG image.

This list **must** be present if PNG-image based transaction confirmation is supported, i.e. tcDisplay is non-zero and tcDisplayContentType is image/png.

**attestationRootCertificates** of type array of required DOMString
Each element of this array represents a PKIX [RFC5280] X.509 certificate that is a valid trust anchor for this authenticator model. Multiple certificates might be used for different batches of the same model. The array does not represent a certificate chain, but only the trust anchor of that chain. A trust anchor can be a root certificate, an intermediate CA certificate or even the attestation certificate itself.

Each array element is a base64-encoded (section 4 of [RFC4648]), DER-encoded [ITU-X690-2008] PKIX certificate value. Each element **must** be dedicated for authenticator attestation.

**NOTE**

A certificate listed here is a trust anchor. It might be the actual certificate presented by the authenticator, or it might be an issuing authority certificate from the vendor that the actual certificate in the authenticator chains to.

In the case of "uaf" protocol family, the attestation certificate itself and the ordered certificate chain are included in the registration assertion (see [UAFAuthnrCommands]).

Either
1. the manufacturer attestation trust anchor
   or
2. the trust anchor dedicated to a specific authenticator model

**must** be specified.

In the case (1), the trust anchor certificate might cover multiple authenticator models. In this case, it must be possible to uniquely derive the authenticator model from the Attestation Certificate. When using AAID or AAGUID, this can be achieved by either specifying the AAID or AAGUID in the attestation certificate using the extension id-fido-gen-ce-aaid (1 3 6 1 4 1 45724 1 1 1) or id-fido-gen-ce-aaguid (1 3 6 1 4 1 45724 1 1 4) or - when neither AAID nor AAGUID are defined - by using the attestationCertificateKeyIdentifier method.

In the case (2) this is not required as the trust anchor only covers a single authenticator model.
When supporting surrogate basic attestation only (see [UAFProtocol], section "Surrogate Basic Attestation"), no attestation trust anchor is required/used. So this array must be empty in that case.

`ecdsaTrustAnchors` of type array of `EcdaaTrustAnchor`
A list of trust anchors used for ECDAA attestation. This entry must be present if and only if `attestationTypeTag` includes `TAG_ATTESTATION_ECDAA`. The entries in `attestationRootCertificates` have no relevance for ECDAA attestation. Each `ecdsaTrustAnchor` must be dedicated to a single authenticator model (e.g., as identified by its AAID/AAGUID).

`icon` of type `DOMString`

`supportedExtensions[]` of type `ExtensionDescriptor`
List of extensions supported by the authenticator.

5. Metadata Statement Format

This section is non-normative.

A FIDO Authenticator Metadata Statement is a document containing a JSON encoded dictionary `MetadataStatement`.

5.1 UAF Example

Example of the metadata statement for an UAF authenticator with:

- `authenticatorVersion`: 2.
- `Fingerprint` based user verification allowing up to 5 registered fingers, with false acceptance rate of 0.002% and rate limiting attempts for 30 seconds after 5 false trials.
- `Authenticator is embedded with the FIDO User device.`
- `The authentication keys are protected by TEE and are restricted to sign valid FIDO sign assertions only.`
- `The (fingerprint) matcher is implemented in TEE.`
- `The Transaction Confirmation Display is implemented in a TEE.`
- `The Transaction Confirmation Display supports display of "image/png" objects only.`
- `Display has a width of 320 and a height of 480 pixel. A bit depth of 16 bits per pixel offering True Color (=Color Type 2). The zlib compression method (0). It doesn't support filtering (i.e. filter type of=0) and no interlacing support (interlace method=0).`
- `The Authenticator can act as first factor or as second factor, i.e. isSecondFactorOnly = false.`
- `It supports the "UAFV1TLV" assertion scheme.`
- `It uses the \`ALG_SIGN_SECP256R1_ECDSA_SHA256_RAW\` authentication algorithm.`
- `It uses the \`ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_RAW\` public key format (0x100=256 decimal).`
- `It only implements the \`TAG_ATTESTATION_BASIC_FULL\` method (0x3E07=15879 decimal).`
- `It implements UAF protocol version (upv) 1.0 and 1.1.`

EXAMPLE 1: MetadataStatement for UAF Authenticator

```
{
  "description": "FIDO Alliance Sample UAF Authenticator",
  "aaid": "1234#5678",
  "alternativeDescriptions": {
    "ru-RU": "Пример UAF аутентификатора от FIDO Alliance",
    "fr-FR": "Exemple UAF authenticator de FIDO Alliance"
  },
  "authenticatorVersion": 2,
  "upv": [
    { "major": 1, "minor": 0 },
    { "major": 1, "minor": 1 }
  ],
  "assertionScheme": "UAFV1TLV",
  "authenticationAlgorithm": 1,
  "publicKeyAlgAndEncoding": 256,
  "attestationTypes": [15879],
  "userVerificationDetails": [
    { "userVerification": 2,
      "baDesc": { "FAR": 0.00002,
                  "maxRetries": 5,
                  "blockSlowdown": 30,
                  "maxReferenceDataSets": 5
                   }
    }
  ],
  "keyProtection": 6,
  "isKeyRestricted": true,
  "matcherProtection": 2,
  "cryptoStrength": 128,
  "operatingEnv": "TEEs based on ARM TrustZone HW",
  "attachmentHint": 1,
  "isSecondFactorOnly": false,
  "tcDisplay": 5,
```

Example of an User Verification Methods entry for an authenticator with:

- Fingerprint based user verification method, with:
  - the ability for the user to enroll up to 5 fingers (reference data sets) with a false acceptance rate of 1 in 50000 (0.002%) per finger. This results in a FAR of 0.01% (0.0001).
  - The fingerprint verification will be blocked after 5 unsuccessful attempts.

- A PIN code with a minimum length of 4 decimal digits has to be set-up as alternative verification method. Entering the PIN into the authenticator will be required to re-activate fingerprint based user verification after it has been blocked.

5.2 U2F Example

Example of the metadata statement for an U2F authenticator with:

- `userVerification 2`
- `baDesc`:
  - `FAR`: 0.00002
  - `maxReferenceDataSets`: 5
  - `maxRetries`: 5
  - `blockSlowdown`: 0

- `caDesc`:
  - `base`: 10
  - `minLength`: 4
- It uses the `ALG_SIGN_SECP256R1_ECDSA_SHA256_RAW` authentication algorithm.
- It uses the `ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_RAW` public key format (0x100=256 decimal).
- It only implements the `TAG_ATTESTATION_BASIC_FULL` method (0x3E07=15879 decimal).
- It implements U2F protocol version 1.0 only.

### 5.3 FIDO2 Example

**Example of the metadata statement for an FIDO2 authenticator with:**

- `AAGUID` is set to 0132d110-bf4e-4208-a403-ab4f5f12efe5.
- `authenticatorVersion` is set to 2.
- Touch based user presence check.
- Authenticator is a USB pluggable hardware token.

**EXAMPLE 3: MetadataStatement for U2F Authenticator**

```json
{
  "description": "FIDO Alliance Sample U2F Authenticator",
  "alternativeDescriptions": {
    "ru-RU": "Пример U2F аутентификатора от FIDO Alliance",
    "fr-FR": "Exemple U2F authenticator de FIDO Alliance",
    "zh-CN": "来自FIDO Alliance的示例U2F身份验证器"
  },
  "attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers": ["7c0903708b87115b0b422def3138c3c864e44573"],
  "protocolFamily": "u2f",
  "authenticatorVersion": 2,
  "upv": [
    {
      "major": 1,
      "minor": 0
    }
  ],
  "assertionScheme": "U2FV1BIN",
  "authenticationAlgorithm": 1,
  "publicKeyAlgAndEncoding": 256,
  "attestationTypes": [15879],
  "userVerificationDetails": [
    {
      "userVerification": 1
    }
  ],
  "keyProtection": 10,
  "matcherProtection": 4,
  "cryptoStrength": 128,
  "operatingEnv": "Secure Element (SE)"
}
```
The authentication keys are protected by a secure element.

The user presence check is implemented in the chip.

It supports the "FIDOV2" assertion scheme.

It uses the ALG_SIGN_SECP256R1_ECDSA_SHA256_RAW authentication algorithm.

It uses the ALG_KEY_COSE public key format (0x104=260 decimal).

It only implements the TAG_ATTESTATION_BASIC_FULL method (0x3E07=15879 decimal).

It implements FIDO2 protocol version 1.0

---

**EXAMPLE 4: MetadataStatement for FIDO2 Authenticator**

```json
{
  "description": "FIDO Alliance Sample FIDO2 Authenticator",
  "aaguid": "0132d110-bf4e-4208-a403-ab4f5f12efe5",
  "alternativeDescriptions": {
    "ru-ru": "Пример FIDO2 аутентификатора от FIDO Alliance",
    "fr-FR": "Exemple FIDO2 authenticator de FIDO Alliance",
    "zh-CN": "来自FIDO Alliance的FIDO2身份验证器"
  },
  "protocolFamily": "fido2",
  "assertionScheme": "FIDOV2",
  "authenticationAlgorithm": 1,
  "publicKeyAlgAndEncoding": 260,
  "attributionTypes": [15879],
  "keyProtection": 10,
  "matcherProtection": 4,
  "cryptoStrength": 128,
  "operatingEnv": "Secure Element (SE)"
}
```
Metadata statements are intended to be stable once they have been published. When authenticators are updated in the field, such updates are expected to improve the authenticator security (for example, improve FRR or FAR). The `authenticatorVersion` must be updated if firmware updates fixing severe security issues (e.g. as reported previously) are available.

**NOTE**
The metadata statement is assumed to relate to all authenticators having the same authenticator model identifier (AAID/AAGUID/attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers).

**NOTE**
The FIDO Server is recommended to assume increased risk if the `authenticatorVersion` specified in the metadata statement is newer (higher) than the one present in the authenticator.

**NORMATIVE**
Significant changes in authenticator functionality are not anticipated in firmware updates. For example, if an authenticator vendor wants to modify a PIN-based authenticator to use "Speaker Recognition" as a user verification method, the vendor must assign a new authenticator model identifier (AAID/AAGUID/attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers) to this authenticator.

**NORMATIVE**
A single authenticator implementation could report itself as two "virtual" authenticators using different authenticator model identifiers (AAIDs/AAGUIDs/attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers). Such implementations must properly (i.e. according to the security characteristics claimed in the metadata) protect `UAuth` keys and other sensitive data from the other "virtual" authenticator - just as a normal authenticator would do.

**NOTE**
Authentication keys (`UAuth.pub`) registered for one authenticator model (e.g. as identified by AAID/AAGUID/attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers) cannot be used by authenticators reporting a different authenticator model identifier (AAID/AAGUID/attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers) - even when running on the same hardware (see section "Authentication Response Processing Rules for FIDO Server" in [UAFProtocol]).

A. References

A.1 Normative references

- **ECMA-262**
  [ECMAScript Language Specification](https://tc39.github.io/ecma262/)

- **FIDORestrictedOperatingEnv**

- **ISO19795-1**

- **ISO30107-1**

- **RFC2049**
  N. Freed; N. Borenstein. [Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Part Five: Conformance Criteria and Examples (RFC 2049)](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2049.txt)

- **RFC2119**
  S. Bradner. [Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2119)

- **RFC2397**
  L. Masinter. [The "data" URL scheme](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2397)

- **RFC4122**
  P. Leach. [A Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) URN Namespace](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4122)

- **UAFProtocol**

- **UAFRegistry**
  R. Lindemann; D. Baghdasaryan; B. Hill. [FIDO UAF Registry of Predefined Values](https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-uaf-v1.2-rd-20171128/fido-uaf-reg-v1.2-rd-20171128.html)

- **WebIDL-ED**
  Cameron McCormack. [Web IDL](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4122)
A.2 Informative references

[AndroidUnlockPattern] Android Unlock Pattern Security Analysis. Published. URL: http://www.sinustrom.info/2012/05/21/android-unlock-pattern-security-analysis/


[FIDOKeyAttestation] FIDO 2.0: Key attestation format. URL: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-ps-20150904/fido-key-attestation-v2.0-ps-20150904.html

[FIDOMetadataService] R. Lindemann; D. Baghdasaryan; B. Hill. FIDO Registry of Predefined Values Implementation Draft. URL: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-id-20180227/fido-registry-v2.0-id-20180227.html


[iPhonePasscodes] Daniel Amitay. Most Common iPhone Passcodes. URL: http://danielamitay.com/blog/2011/6/13/most-common-
iphone-passcodes
FIDO Metadata Service
FIDO Alliance Implementation Draft 27 February 2018

This version: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-id-20180227/fido-metadata-service-v2.0-id-20180227.html
Previous version: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-ps-20170927/fido-metadata-service-v2.0-ps-20170927.html
Editor: Rolf Lindemann, Nok Nok Labs, Inc.
Contributors: Brad Hill, PayPal, Inc.
Davit Baghdasaryan, Nok Nok Labs, Inc.

Abstract
The FIDO Authenticator Metadata Specification defines so-called "Authenticator Metadata" statements. The metadata statements contain the "Trust Anchor" required to validate the attestation object, and they also describe several other important characteristics of the authenticator.

The metadata service described in this document defines a baseline method for relying parties to access the latest metadata statements.

Status of This Document
This section describes the status of this document at the time of its publication. Other documents may supersede this document. A list of current FIDO Alliance publications and the latest revision of this technical report can be found in the FIDO Alliance specifications index at https://www.fidoalliance.org/specifications/.

This document was published by the FIDO Alliance as a Implementation Draft. This document is intended to become a FIDO Alliance Proposed Standard. If you wish to make comments regarding this document, please Contact Us. All comments are welcome.

This Implementation Draft Specification has been prepared by FIDO Alliance, Inc. Permission is hereby granted to use the Specification solely for the purpose of implementing the Specification. No rights are granted to prepare derivative works of this Specification. Entities seeking permission to reproduce portions of this Specification for other uses must contact the FIDO Alliance to determine whether an appropriate license for such use is available.

Implementation of certain elements of this Specification may require licenses under third party intellectual property rights, including without limitation, patent rights. The FIDO Alliance, Inc. and its Members and any other contributors to the Specification are not, and shall not be held, responsible in any manner for identifying or failing to identify any or all such third party intellectual property rights.

THIS FIDO ALLIANCE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Table of Contents

1. Notation
   1.1 Key Words
2. Overview
   2.1 Scope
   2.2 Detailed Architecture

3. Metadata Service Details
   3.1 Metadata TOC Format
      3.1.1 Metadata TOC Payload Entry dictionary
      3.1.1.1 Dictionary MetadataTOCPayloadEntry Members
      3.1.2 StatusReport dictionary
         3.1.2.1 Dictionary StatusReport Members
      3.1.3 AuthenticatorStatus enum
      3.1.4 RogueListEntry dictionary
         3.1.4.1 Dictionary RogueListEntry Members
      3.1.5 Metadata TOC Payload dictionary
         3.1.5.1 Dictionary MetadataTOCPayload Members
      3.1.6 Metadata TOC
         3.1.6.1 Examples
      3.1.7 Metadata TOC object processing rules

4. Considerations

A. References
   A.1 Normative references
   A.2 Informative references

1. Notation

Type names, attribute names and element names are written as code.

String literals are enclosed in "", e.g. “UAF-TLV”.

In formulas we use "|" to denote byte wise concatenation operations.

The notation base64url(byte[8..64]) reads as 8-64 bytes of data encoded in base64url, "Base 64 Encoding with URL and Filename Safe Alphabet" [RFC4648] without padding.

Following [WebIDL-ED], dictionary members are optional unless they are explicitly marked as required.

WebIDL dictionary members must not have a value of null.

Unless otherwise specified, if a WebIDL dictionary member is DOMString, it must not be empty.

Unless otherwise specified, if a WebIDL dictionary member is a List, it must not be an empty list.

UAF specific terminology used in this document is defined in [FIDOGlossary].

All diagrams, examples, notes in this specification are non-normative.

NOTE

Note: Certain dictionary members need to be present in order to comply with FIDO requirements. Such members are marked in the WebIDL definitions found in this document, as required. The keyword required has been introduced by [WebIDL-ED], which is a work-in-progress. If you are using a WebIDL parser which implements [WebIDL], then you may remove the keyword required from your WebIDL and use other means to ensure those fields are present.

1.1 Key Words

The key words “must”, “must not”, “required”, “shall”, “shall not”, “should”, “should not”, “recommended”, “may”, and “optional” in this document are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].

2. Overview

This section is non-normative.

[FIDOMetadataStatement] defines authenticator metadata statements.

These metadata statements contain the trust anchor required to verify the attestation object (more specifically the KeyRegistrationData object), and they also describe several other important characteristics of the authenticator, including supported authentication and registration assertion schemes, and key protection flags.
These characteristics can be used when defining policies about which authenticators are acceptable for registration or authentication.

The metadata service described in this document defines a baseline method for relying parties to access the latest metadata statements.

![FIDO Metadata Service Architecture Overview](image)

2.1 Scope

This document describes the FIDO Metadata Service architecture in detail and it defines the structure and interface to access this service. It also defines the flow of the metadata related messages and presents the rationale behind the design choices.

2.2 Detailed Architecture

The metadata "table-of-contents" (TOC) file contains a list of metadata statements related to the authenticators known to the FIDO Alliance (FIDO Authenticators).

The FIDO Server downloads the metadata TOC file from a well-known FIDO URL and caches it locally.

The FIDO Server verifies the integrity and authenticity of this metadata TOC file using the digital signature. It then iterates through the individual entries and loads the metadata statements related to authenticator AAIDs relevant to the relying party.

Individual metadata statements will be downloaded from the URL specified in the entry of the metadata TOC file, and may be cached by the FIDO Server as required.

The integrity of the metadata statements will be verified by the FIDO Server using the hash value included in the related entry of the metadata TOC file.
3. Metadata Service Details

This section is normative.

NOTE

The single arrow indicates the direction of the network connection, the double arrow indicates the direction of the data flow.

NOTE

The metadata TOC file is accessible at a well-known URL published by the FIDO Alliance.

NOTE

The relying party decides how frequently the metadata service is accessed to check for metadata TOC updates.

3.1 Metadata TOC Format

NOTE

The metadata service makes the metadata TOC object (see Metadata TOC) accessible to FIDO Servers. This object is a “table-of-contents” for metadata, as it includes the AAID, the download URL and the hash value of the individual metadata statements. The TOC object contains one signature.
3.1.1 Metadata TOC Payload Entry dictionary

Represents the MetadataTOCPayloadEntry

```webidl
dictionary MetadataTOCPayloadEntry {
  AAID aaid;
  AAGUID aaguid;
  DOMString[] attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers;
  DOMString hash;
  DOMString url;
  required StatusReport[] statusReports;
  required DOMString timeOfLastStatusChange;
  DOMString rogueListURL;
  DOMString rogueListHash;
};
```

### 3.1.1.1 Dictionary MetadataTOCPayloadEntry Members

**aaid** of type AAID

The AAID of the authenticator this metadata TOC payload entry relates to. See [UAFProtocol] for the definition of the AAID structure. This field *must* be set if the authenticator implements FIDO UAF.

**NOTE**

FIDO UAF authenticators support AAID, but they don’t support AAGUID.

**aaguid** of type AAGUID

The Authenticator Attestation GUID. See [FIDOKeyAttestation] for the definition of the AAGUID structure. This field *must* be set if the authenticator implements FIDO 2.

**NOTE**

FIDO 2 authenticators support AAGUID, but they don’t support AAID.

**attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers** of type array of DOMString

A list of the attestation certificate public key identifiers encoded as hex string. This value *must* be calculated according to method 1 for computing the keyIdentifier as defined in [RFC5280] section 4.2.1.2. The hex string *must not* contain any non-hex characters (e.g. spaces). All hex letters *must* be lower case. This field *must* be set if neither aaid nor aaguid are set. Setting this field implies that the attestation certificate(s) are dedicated to a single authenticator model.

**NOTE**

FIDO U2F authenticators do not support AAID nor AAGUID, but they use attestation certificates dedicated to a single authenticator model.

**hash** of type DOMString

`base64url(string[1..512])`

The hash value computed over the base64url encoding of the UTF-8 representation of the JSON encoded metadata statement available at `url` and as defined in [FIDOMetadataStatement]. The hash algorithm related to the signature algorithm specified in the JWTHeader (see Metadata TOC) *must* be used.

If this field is missing, the metadata statement has not been published.

**NOTE**

This method of base64url encoding the UTF-8 representation is also used by JWT [JWT] to avoid encoding ambiguities.

**url** of type DOMString

Uniform resource locator (URL) of the encoded metadata statement for this authenticator model (identified by its AAID, AAGUID or attestationCertificateKeyIdentifier). This URL *must* point to the base64url encoding of the UTF-8 representation of the JSON encoded metadata statement as defined in [FIDOMetadataStatement].
If this field is missing, the metadata statement has not been published.

```plaintext
encodedMetadataStatement = base64url(utf8(JSONMetadataStatement))
```

**NOTE**

This method of the base64url encoding the UTF-8 representation is also used by JWT [JWT] to avoid encoding ambiguities.

`statusReports` of type array of required `StatusReport`

An array of status reports applicable to this authenticator.

`timeOfLastStatusChange` of type required `DOMString`

ISO-8601 formatted date since when the status report array was set to the current value.

`rogueListURL` of type `DOMString`

URL of a list of rogue (i.e. untrusted) individual authenticators.

`rogueListHash` of type `DOMString`

`base64url(string[1..512])`

The hash value computed over the Base64url encoding of the UTF-8 representation of the JSON encoded rogueList available at `rogueListURL` (with type `rogueListEntry[]`). The hash algorithm related to the signature algorithm specified in the JWTHeader (see Metadata TOC) must be used.

This hash value must be present and non-empty whenever `rogueListURL` is present.

**NOTE**

This method of base64url-encoding the UTF-8 representation is also used by JWT [JWT] to avoid encoding ambiguities.

### EXAMPLE 1: UAF Metadata TOC Payload

```json
{
  "no": 1234,
  "nextUpdate": "2014-03-31",
  "entries": [
    {
      "aaid": "1234#5678",
      "hash": "90da8da6de23248abb34da0d4861f4b30a793e198a8d5ba7f98f260db71acd4",
      "url": "https://fidoalliance.org/metadata/1234%x23abcd",
      "rogueListHash": "b5079cf40f7ed174c645ccc0d4f1e72b7f127d20b9541c6b5",
      "rogueListURL": "https://fidoalliance.org/metadata/1234%x23abcd.r1",
      "statusReports": [
        { status: "FIDO_CERTIFIED", effectiveDate: "2014-01-04"
        },
        { status: "FIDO_CERTIFIED", effectiveDate: "2014-01-04"
        }
      ],
      "timeOfLastStatusChange": "2014-01-04"
    },
    {
      "attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers": [
        "7c0903708b87115b0b42def3138c3c864e44573"
      ],
      "hash": "785d16d640fd7b50ed174eb5645cc0f1e72b7f19cfc224595052d20b9541c64d",
      "url": "https://authnr-vendor-a.com/metadata/9876%x23421",
      "statusReports": [
        { status: "FIDO_CERTIFIED", effectiveDate: "2014-01-07"},
        { status: "UPDATE_AVAILABLE", effectiveDate: "2014-02-19",
          url: "https://example.com/update1234"
        }
      ],
      "timeOfLastStatusChange": "2014-02-19"
    }
  ]
}
```

**NOTE**

The character `#` is a reserved character and not allowed in URLs [RFC3986]. As a consequence it has been replaced by its hex value `%x23`.

The authenticator vendors can decide to let the metadata service publish its metadata statements or to publish metadata statements themselves. Authenticator vendors can restrict access to the metadata statements they publish themselves.

### 3.1.2 StatusReport dictionary

**NOTE**

Contains an `AuthenticatorStatus` and additional data associated with it, if any.
The latest StatusReport entry must reflect the "current" status. For example, if the latest entry has status `USER_VERIFICATION_BYPASS`, then it is recommended assuming an increased risk associated with all authenticators of this AAID; if the latest entry has status `UPDATE_AVAILABLE`, then the update is intended to address at least all previous issues reported in this StatusReport dictionary.

```webidl
dictionary StatusReport {
    required AuthenticatorStatus status;
    DOMString effectiveDate;
    DOMString certificate;
    DOMString url;
    DOMString certificationDescriptor;
    DOMString certificateNumber;
    DOMString certificationPolicyVersion;
    DOMString certificationRequirementsVersion;
};
```

### 3.1.2.1 Dictionary `StatusReport` Members

- **status**
  - Type: required AuthenticatorStatus
  - Status of the authenticator. Additional fields may be set depending on this value.

- **effectiveDate**
  - Type: DOMString
  - ISO-8601 formatted date since when the status code was set, if applicable. If no date is given, the status is assumed to be effective while present.

- **certificate**
  - Type: DOMString
  - Base64-encoded [RFC4648] (not base64url!) DER [ITU-X690-2008] PKIX certificate value related to the current status, if applicable.

  **NOTE**
  As an example, this could be an Attestation Root Certificate (see [FIDOMetadataStatement]) related to a set of compromised authenticators (ATTESTATION_KEY_COMPROMISE).

- **url**
  - Type: DOMString
  - HTTPS URL where additional information may be found related to the current status, if applicable.

  **NOTE**
  For example a link to a web page describing an available firmware update in the case of status `UPDATE_AVAILABLE`, or a link to a description of an identified issue in the case of status `USER_VERIFICATION_BYPASS`.

- **certificationDescriptor**
  - Type: DOMString
  - Describes the externally visible aspects of the Authenticator Certification evaluation.

- **certificateNumber**
  - Type: DOMString
  - The unique identifier for the issued Certification

- **certificationPolicyVersion**
  - Type: DOMString
  - The version of the Authenticator Certification Policy the implementation is Certified to, e.g. "1.0.0".

- **certificationRequirementsVersion**
  - Type: DOMString
  - The version of the Authenticator Security Requirements the implementation is Certified to, e.g. "1.0.0".

### 3.1.3 AuthenticatorStatus enum

This enumeration describes the status of an authenticator model as identified by its AAID and potentially some additional information (such as a specific attestation key).

```webidl
define AuthenticatorStatus {
    "NOT_FIDO_CERTIFIED",
    "FIDO_CERTIFIED",
    "USER_VERIFICATION_BYPASS",
    "UPDATE_AVAILABLE",
    "UPDATE_AVAILABLE_BYPASS",
    "USER_VERIFICATION_BYPASS_BYPASS",
};
```
### Enumeration description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AuthenticatorStatus</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOT_FIDO_CERTIFIED</td>
<td>This authenticator is not FIDO certified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIDO_CERTIFIED</td>
<td>This authenticator has passed FIDO functional certification. This certification scheme is phased out and will be replaced by FIDO_CERTIFIED_L1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER_VERIFICATION_BYPASS</td>
<td>Indicates that malware is able to bypass the user verification. This means that the authenticator could be used without the user's consent and potentially even without the user's knowledge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATTESTATION_KEY_COMPROMISE</td>
<td>Indicates that an attestation key for this authenticator is known to be compromised. Additional data should be supplied, including the key identifier and the date of compromise, if known.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER_KEY_REMOTE_COMPROMISE</td>
<td>This authenticator has identified weaknesses that allow registered keys to be compromised and should not be trusted. This would include both, e.g. weak entropy that causes predictable keys to be generated or side channels that allow keys or signatures to be forged, guessed or extracted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER_KEY_PHYSICAL_COMPROMISE</td>
<td>This authenticator has known weaknesses in its key protection mechanism(s) that allow user keys to be extracted by an adversary in physical possession of the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDATE_AVAILABLE</td>
<td>A software or firmware update is available for the device. Additional data should be supplied including a URL where users can obtain an update and the date the update was published.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When this code is used, then the field `authenticatorVersion` in the metadata `FIDOMetadataStatement` must be updated, if the update fixes severe security issues, e.g. the ones reported by preceding StatusReport entries with status code USER_VERIFICATION_BYPASS, ATTESTATION_KEY_COMPROMISE, USER_KEY_REMOTE_COMPROMISE, USER_KEY_PHYSICAL_COMPROMISE, REVOKED.

### NOTE

Relying parties might want to inform users about available firmware updates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AuthenticatorStatus</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REVOKED</td>
<td>The FIDO Alliance has determined that this authenticator should not be trusted for any reason, for example if it is known to be a fraudulent product or contain a deliberate backdoor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELF_ASSERTION_SUBMITTED</td>
<td>The authenticator vendor has completed and submitted the self-certification checklist to the FIDO Alliance. If this completed checklist is publicly available, the URL will be specified in <code>StatusReport.url</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIDO_CERTIFIED_L1</td>
<td>The authenticator has passed FIDO Authenticator certification at level 1. This level is the more strict successor of FIDO_CERTIFIED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIDO_CERTIFIED_L2</td>
<td>The authenticator has passed FIDO Authenticator certification at level 2. This level is more strict than level 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIDO_CERTIFIED_L3</td>
<td>The authenticator has passed FIDO Authenticator certification at level 3. This level is more strict than level 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIDO_CERTIFIED_L4</td>
<td>The authenticator has passed FIDO Authenticator certification at level 4. This level is more strict than level 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIDO_CERTIFIED_L5</td>
<td>The authenticator has passed FIDO Authenticator certification at level 5. This level is more strict than level 4.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More values might be added in the future. FIDO Servers must silently ignore all unknown AuthenticatorStatus values.

### 3.1.4 RogueListEntry dictionary
NOTE
Contains a list of individual authenticators known to be rogue.
New `RogueListEntry` entries will be added to report new individual authenticators known to be rogue.
Old `RogueListEntry` entries will be removed if the individual authenticator is known to not be rogue any longer.

```
WebIDL
dictionary RogueListEntry {  
  required DOMString sk;  
  required DOMString date;  
};
```

3.1.4.1 Dictionary `RogueListEntry` Members

`sk` of type `required DOMString`
Base64url encoding of the rogue authenticator's secret key (sk value, see [FIDOEdcdaAlgorithm], section ECDAA Attestation).

NOTE
In order to revoke an individual authenticator, its secret key (sk) must be known.

`date` of type `required DOMString`
ISO-8601 formatted date since when this entry is effective.

EXAMPLE 2: `RogueListEntry[]` example

```
[  
  { "sk": "30efa86aa6de25249acb35da0d4861f4b30a793e198a8d5baa7e96f240da51f3",  
     "date": "2016-06-07"},  
  { "sk": "93de8da6de23248abb34da0d4861f4b30a793e153a8d5bb27f98f260db71acd4",  
     "date": "2016-06-09"},  
]
```

3.1.5 Metadata TOC Payload dictionary

Represents the `MetadataTOCPayload` dictionary

```
WebIDL
dictionary MetadataTOCPayload {  
  DOMString legalHeader;  
  required Number no;  
  required DOMString nextUpdate;  
  required MetadataTOCPayloadEntry[] entries;  
};
```

3.1.5.1 Dictionary `MetadataTOCPayload` Members

`legalHeader` of type `DOMString`
The legalHeader, if present, contains a legal guide for accessing and using metadata, which itself may contain URL(s) pointing to further information, such as a full Terms and Conditions statement.

`no` of type `required Number`
The serial number of this UAF Metadata TOC Payload. Serial numbers must be consecutive and strictly monotonic, i.e. the successor TOC will have a no value exactly incremented by one.

`nextUpdate` of type `required DOMString`
ISO-8601 formatted date when the next update will be provided at latest.

`entries` of type array of `required MetadataTOCPayloadEntry`
List of zero or more `MetadataTOCPayloadEntry` objects.

3.1.6 Metadata TOC

NOTE
Contains a list of individual authenticators known to be rogue.
New `RogueListEntry` entries will be added to report new individual authenticators known to be rogue.
Old `RogueListEntry` entries will be removed if the individual authenticator is known to not be rogue any longer.
It consists of three elements:

- The base64url encoding, without padding, of the UTF-8 encoded JWS Header (see example below),
- the base64url encoding, without padding, of the UTF-8 encoded JWS Payload (see example above) at the beginning of section Metadata TOC Format,
- and the base64url-encoded, also without padding, JWS Signature.

All three elements of the TOC are concatenated by a period ("."):

```
Metadata TOC = EncodedJWTHeader | "." | EncodedMetadataTOCPayload | "." | EncodedJWSSignature
```

The hash algorithm related to the signing algorithm specified in the JWS Header (e.g. SHA256 in the case of Metadata TOC Payload using the Metadata TOC signing key, i.e. the base64url encoding, without padding, of the UTF-8 encoded UAF Metadata TOC Payload (see example at the beginning of section Metadata TOC Format),

The base64url encoding, without padding, of the UTF-8 encoded JWT Header (see example below),

```
eyAiQUFJRCI6ICIxMjM0IzU2NzgiLA0KICAiQXR0ZXN0YXRpb25zIiwNCiAgIkljb24iOiAiZGF0YTppbmc7YmFzZTY0LGlWQk9SdzBLR2dvQUFBLDAsMSwsMTYsMiwwLDAsMF1dLA0KICAiaXNTZWNvbmRGYWN0b3JPCiwNCiAgIlNlY3VyZURpc3BsYXkiOiA0LA0KICAiU2VjdXJlRGlzcGxheUNvbnRlbnRUeXBlcyI6IDEsDQogICJLZXlQcm90ZWN0aW9uIjogNiwNCiAgIk1hdGNoZXJQcm90ZWN0aW9uIjogciIsDQogICJVc2VyVmVyaWZpY2F0aW9uTWV0aG9kcyI6IDIsDQogICJWYWxpZEF0dGFjaG1lbnRUbG9IQTNDTGh4RmJDMEl0N3pFNHc4aGs1RUovTUF3Rw0KQTFVZEV3UUZNQU1CQWY4d0NnWUlLb1pJWURWUjBPQkJZRUZQb0hBMVVkSXdRWU1CYUFGS29aSQ0KemowREFRY0RRZ0FFSDhodjJEMEhYYTU5L0JtcFE3UlplaEwvRk1HekZkMVFCZzl2QVVwMGJ6RUxNQWtHQTFVRUNBd0NRMEV4Q3pBSkJnTlZCQVlUQWxWVE13SGhjTk1U
```

This section is non-normative.

**EXAMPLE 3: Encoded Metadata Statement**

```
eyAiQFJpRcI6IXMjI0Ij8zNzgNCmgzV3AxTHpOZk5rNTRYeEMxd0RHVW1ZelhZZWZoNnowY0t0Vm00RUJ4YTlWUUdEellyM0xyaHJ4QXVYTGxrSDRhWXVHZk1ZRGMxMFdGNVRhMzFoUEpPZmNVaHINClUvSmxJTmk2YzZlbFJZZEJw
```

```
In order to produce the tbsPayload, we first need the base64url-encoded (without padding) JWT Header:
then we have to append a period ("."), the base64url encoding of the EncodedMetadataTOCPayload (taken from the example in section Metadata TOC Format):
and finally we have to append another period ("."), followed by the base64url-encoded signature.

Then we have to append a period ("."), and the base64url encoding of the EncodedMetadataTOCPayload (taken from the example in section Metadata TOC Format):

and finally another period ("."), followed by the base64url-encoded signature.
The FIDO Server must follow these processing rules:

1. The FIDO Server must be able to download the latest metadata TOC object from the well-known URL, when appropriate. The nextUpdate field of the Metadata TOC specifies a date when the download should occur at latest.
2. If the x5u attribute is present in the JWT Header, then:
   1. The FIDO Server must verify that the URL specified by the x5u attribute has the same web-origin as the URL used to download the metadata TOC from. The FIDO Server should ignore the file if the web-origin differs (in order to prevent loading objects from arbitrary sites).
   2. The FIDO Server must download the certificate (chain) from the URL specified by the x5u attribute [JWS]. The certificate chain must be verified to properly chain to the metadata TOC signing trust anchor according to [RFC5280]. All certificates in the chain must be checked for revocation according to [RFC5280].
   3. The FIDO Server should ignore the file if the chain cannot be verified or if one of the chain certificates is revoked.
3. If the x5u attribute is missing, the chain should be retrieved from the x5c attribute. If that attribute is missing as well, Metadata TOC signing trust anchor is considered the TOC signing certificate chain.
4. Verify the signature of the Metadata TOC object using the TOC signing certificate chain (as determined by the steps above). The FIDO Server should ignore the file if the signature is invalid. It should also ignore the file if its number (no) is less or equal to the number of the last Metadata TOC object cached locally.
5. Write the verified object to a local cache as required.
6. Iterate through the individual entries (of type MetadataTOCPayloadEntry). For each entry:
   1. Ignore the entry if the AAID, AAGUID or attestationCertificateKeyIdentifiers is not relevant to the relying party (e.g. not acceptable by any policy)
   2. Download the metadata statement from the URL specified by the field url. Some authenticator vendors might require authentication in order to provide access to the data. Conforming FIDO Servers should support the HTTP Basic, and HTTP Digest authentication schemes, as defined in [RFC2617].
   3. Check whether the status report of the authenticator model has changed compared to the cached entry by looking at the fields timeOfLastStatusChange and statusReport. Update the status of the cached entry. It is up to the relying party to specify behavior for authenticators with status reports that indicate a lack of certification, or known security issues. However, the status REVOKED indicates significant security issues related to such authenticators.
   4. Compute the hash value of the (base64url encoding without padding of the UTF-8 encoded) metadata statement downloaded from the URL and verify the hash value to the hash specified in the field hash of the metadata TOC object. Ignore the downloaded metadata statement if the hash value doesn't match.
   5. Update the cached metadata statement according to the downloaded one.

4. Considerations

This section is non-normative.

This section describes the key considerations for designing this metadata service.

Need for Authenticator Metadata When defining policies for acceptable authenticators, it is often better to describe the required authenticator characteristics in a generic way than to list individual authenticator AAIDs. The metadata statements provide such information. Authenticator metadata also provides the trust anchor required to verify attestation objects.

The metadata service provides a standardized method to access such metadata statements.

Integrity and Authenticity Metadata statements include information relevant for the security. Some business verticals might have the need to document authenticator policies and trust anchors used for verifying attestation objects for auditing purposes.

It is important to have a strong method to verify and proof integrity and authenticity and the freshness of metadata statements. We are using a single digital signature to protect the integrity and authenticity of the Metadata TOC object and we protect the integrity and authenticity of the individual metadata statements by including their cryptographic hash values into the Metadata TOC object. This allows for flexible distribution of the metadata statements and the Metadata TOC object using standard content distribution networks.

Organizational Impact Authenticator vendors can delegate the publication of metadata statements to the metadata service in its entirety. Even if authenticator vendors choose to publish metadata statements themselves, the effort is very limited as the metadata statement can be published like a normal document on a website. The FIDO Alliance has control over the FIDO certification process and receives the metadata as part of that process anyway. With this
metadata service, the list of known authenticators needs to be updated, signed and published regularly. A single signature needs to be generated in order to protect the integrity and authenticity of the metadata TOC object.

**Performance Impact** Metadata TOC objects and metadata statements can be cached by the FIDO Server. The update policy can be specified by the relying party.

The metadata TOC object includes a date for the next scheduled update. As a result there is no additional impact to the FIDO Server during FIDO Authentication or FIDO Registration operations.

Updating the Metadata TOC object and metadata statements can be performed asynchronously. This reduces the availability requirements for the metadata service and the load for the FIDO Server.

The metadata TOC object itself is relatively small as it does not contain the individual metadata statements. So downloading the metadata TOC object does not generate excessive data traffic.

Individual metadata statements are expected to change less frequently than the metadata TOC object. Only the modified metadata statements need be downloaded by the FIDO Server.

**Non-public Metadata Statements** Some authenticator vendors might want to provide access to metadata statements only to their subscribed customers. They can publish the metadata statements on access protected URLs. The access URL and the cryptographic hash of the metadata statement is included in the metadata TOC object.

**High Security Environments** Some high security environments might only trust internal policy authorities. FIDO Servers in such environments could be restricted to use metadata TOC objects from a proprietary trusted source only. The metadata service is the baseline for most relying parties.

**Extended Authenticator Information** Some relying parties might want additional information about authenticators before accepting them. The policy configuration is under control of the relying party, so it is possible to only accept authenticators for which additional data is available and meets the requirements.

A. References

A.1 Normative references

[FIDOMetadataStatement]
B. Hill; D. Baghdasaryan; J. Kemp. FIDO Metadata Statements v1.0. Implementation Draft. URL: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-id-20180227/fido-metadata-statement-v2.0-id-20180227.html

[JWS]

[JWT]

[RFC4648]

[RFC5280]

[WebIDL-ED]

A.2 Informative references

[FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm]

[FIDOGLOSSARY]
R. Lindemann; D. Baghdasaryan; B. Hill; J. Hodges. FIDO Technical Glossary. Implementation Draft. URL: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-id-20180227/fido-glossary-v2.0-id-20180227.html

[FIDOKEYAttestation]
FIDO 2.0: Key attestation format. URL: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-ps-20150904/fido-key-attestation-v2.0-ps-20150904.html

[ITU-X690-2008]

[RFC2119]

[RFC2617]
J. Franks; P. Hallam-Baker; J. Hostetler; S. Lawrence; P. Leach; A. Luotonen; L. Stewart. HTTP Authentication: Basic and Digest Access Authentication. June 1999. Draft Standard. URL:
Abstract

The FIDO Basic Attestation scheme uses attestation "group" keys shared across a set of authenticators with identical characteristics in order to preserve privacy by avoiding the introduction of global correlation handles. If such an attestation key is extracted from one single authenticator, it is possible to create a "fake" authenticator using the same key and hence indistinguishable from the original authenticators by the relying party. Removing trust for registering new authenticators with the related key would affect the entire set of authenticators sharing the same "group" key. Depending on the number of authenticators, this risk might be unacceptable high.

This is especially relevant when the attestation key is primarily protected against malware attacks as opposed to targeted physical attacks.

An alternative approach to "group" keys is the use of individual keys combined with a Privacy-CA [TPMv1-2-Part1]. Translated to FIDO, this approach would require one Privacy-CA interaction for each Uauth key. This means relatively high load and high availability requirements for the Privacy-CA. Additionally the Privacy-CA aggregates sensitive information (i.e. knowing the relying parties the user interacts with). This might make the Privacy-CA an interesting attack target.

Another alternative is the Direct Anonymous Attestation [BriCamChe2004-DAA]. Direct Anonymous Attestation is a cryptographic scheme combining privacy with security. It uses the authenticator specific secret once to communicate with a single DAA issuer and uses the resulting DAA credential in the DAA-Sign protocol with each relying party. The DAA scheme has been adopted by the Trusted Computing Group for TPM v1.2 [TPMv1-2-Part1].

In this document, we specify the use of an improved DAA scheme [FIDO-DAA-Security-Proof] based on elliptic curves and bilinear pairings largely compatible with [CheLi2013-ECDAA] called ECDAA. This scheme provides significantly improved performance compared with the original DAA and basic building blocks for its implementation are part of the TPMv2 specification [TPMv2-Part1].

The improvements over [CheLi2013-ECDAA] mainly consist of security fixes (see [ANZ-2013] and [XYZF-2014]) when splitting the sign operation into two parts.

This specification includes the fixes of the issue regarding (1) the Diffie-Hellman oracle w.r.t. the secret key of the TPM and (2) regarding the potential privacy violations by fraudulent TPMs as proposed in [CCDLNU2017-DAA].
2.1 Scope

This section is non-normative.

FIDO uses the concept of attestation to provide a cryptographic proof of the authenticator [FIDO glossary] model to the relying party. When the authenticator is registered to the relying party (RP), it generates a new authentication key pair and includes the public key in the attestation message (also known as key registration data object, KRD). When using the ECDAA algorithm, the KRD object is signed using 3.5 ECDAA-Sign.

For privacy reasons, the authentication key pair is dedicated to one RP (to an application identifier AppID [FIDO glossary] to be more specific). Consequently the attestation method needs to provide the same level of unlinkability. This is the reason why the FIDO ECDAA Algorithm doesn’t use a basename (bsn) often found in other direct anonymous attestation algorithms, e.g., [BriCamChe2004-DAA] or [BFGSW-2011].

The authenticator encapsulates all user verification operations and cryptographic functions. An authenticator specific module (ASM) [FIDO glossary] is used to provide a standardized communication interface for authenticators. The authenticator might be implemented in separate hardware or trusted execution environments. The ASM is assumed to run in the normal operating system (e.g. Android, Windows, ...).

2.2 Architecture Overview

2.3 FIDO ECDAA Attestation

3.1 Object Encodings

3.1.1 Encoding BigNumber values as byte strings (BigNumberToB)

3.1.2 Encoding ECPoint values as byte strings (ECPointToB)

3.1.3 Encoding ECPoint2 values as byte strings (ECPoint2ToB)

3.2 Global ECDAA System Parameters

3.3 Issuer Specific ECDAA Parameters

3.4 ECDAA-Join

3.4.1 ECDAA-Join Algorithm

3.4.2 ECDAA-Join Split between Authenticator and ASM

3.4.3 ECDAA-Join Split between TPM and ASM

3.5 ECDAA-Sign

3.5.1 ECDAA-Sign Algorithm

3.5.2 ECDAA-Sign Split between Authenticator and ASM

3.5.3 ECDAA-Sign Split between TPM and ASM

3.6 ECDAA-Verify Operation

4. FIDO ECDAA Object Formats and Algorithm Details

4.1 Supported Curves for ECDAA

4.2 ECDAA Algorithm Names

4.3 edcassign object

5. Considerations

5.1 Algorithms and Key Sizes

5.2 Indicating the Authenticator Model

5.3 Revocation

5.4 Pairing Algorithm

5.5 Performance

5.6 Binary Concatentation

5.7 IANA Considerations

A. References

A.1 Normative references

A.2 Informative references

1. Notation

Type names, attribute names and element names are written as code.

String literals are enclosed in "", e.g. “ED256”.

In formulas we use “|” to denote byte wise concatenation operations.

\[ X = P^x \] denotes scalar multiplication (with scalar \( x \)) of a (elliptic) curve point \( P \).

\[ \text{RAND}(x) \] denotes generation of a random number between \( 0 \) and \( x-1 \).

\[ \text{RAND}(G) \] denotes generation of a random number belonging to Group \( G \).

Specific terminology used in this document is defined in [FIDO glossary].

The type BigNumber denotes an arbitrary length integer value.

The type ECPoint denotes an elliptic curve point with its affine coordinates \( x \) and \( y \).

The type ECPoint2 denotes a point on the sextic twist of a BN elliptic curve over \( \mathbb{F}_q^2 \). The ECPoint2 has two affine coordinates each having two components of type BigNumber.

1.1 Conformance

As well as sections marked as non-normative, all authoring guidelines, diagrams, examples, and notes in this specification are non-normative. Everything else in this specification is normative.

The key words must, must not, required, should, should not, recommended, may, and optional in this specification are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].

2. Overview

This section is non-normative.

FIDO uses the concept of attestation to provide a cryptographic proof of the authenticator [FIDO glossary] model to the relying party. When the authenticator is registered to the relying party (RP), it generates a new authentication key pair and includes the public key in the attestation message (also known as key registration data object, KRD). When using the ECDAA algorithm, the KRD object is signed using 3.5 ECDAA-Sign.

For privacy reasons, the authentication key pair is dedicated to one RP (to an application identifier AppID [FIDO glossary] to be more specific). Consequently the attestation method needs to provide the same level of unlinkability. This is the reason why the FIDO ECDAA Algorithm doesn’t use a basename (bsn) often found in other direct anonymous attestation algorithms, e.g., [BriCamChe2004-DAA] or [BFGSW-2011].

The authenticator encapsulates all user verification operations and cryptographic functions. An authenticator specific module (ASM) [FIDO glossary] is used to provide a standardized communication interface for authenticators. The authenticator might be implemented in separate hardware or trusted execution environments. The ASM is assumed to run in the normal operating system (e.g. Android, Windows, ...).

2.1 Scope

This document describes the FIDO ECDAA attestation algorithm in detail.
2.2 Architecture Overview

ECDAA attestation defines global system parameters and ECDAA Issuer specific parameters. Both parameter sets need to be installed on the host, in the authenticator and in the FIDO Server. The ECDAA method consists of two steps:

- **ECDAA-Join** between the authenticator and the ECDAA Issuer to be performed before the first FIDO Registration. The ECDAA Issuer represents the authenticator vendor as it provides the credentials to attest the authenticator model.
  - \((n, B, sc, yc) = \text{GetNonceFromECDAAIssuer}()\)
  - \((D=Q, c1, s1) = \text{EcdaaJoin1}(X, Y, B, sc, yc, n)\)
  - \(\text{EcdaaJoin2}(A, C) // store cr=(A, B, C, D)\)

- and the pair of **ECDAA-Sign** performed by the authenticator and **ECDAA-Verify** performed by the FIDO Server of the relying party as part of the FIDO Registration.
  - Client: \(\text{Attestation} = (\text{signature}, \text{KRD}) = \text{EcdaaSign(AppID)}\)
  - Server: success=\(\text{EcdaaVerify}(\text{signature}, \text{KRD}, \text{AppID})\)

The technical implementation details of the ECDAA-Join step are out-of-scope for FIDO. In this document we normatively specify the general algorithm to the extent required for interoperability and we outline examples of some possible implementations for this step.

The ECDAA-Sign and ECDAA-Verify steps and the encoding of the related ECDAA Signature are normatively specified in this document. The generation and encoding of the KRD object is defined in other FIDO specifications.

The algorithm and terminology are inspired by \[BFGSW-2011\]. The algorithm was modified in order to fix security weaknesses (e.g. as mentioned by \[ANZ-2013\] and \[XYZF-2014\]). Our algorithm proposes an improved task split for the sign operation while still being compatible to TPMv2 (without fixing the TPMv2 weaknesses in such case).

3. FIDO ECDAA Attestation

This section is normative.

3.1 Object Encodings

We need to convert \textbf{BigNumber} and \textbf{ECPoint} objects to byte strings using the following encoding functions:

### 3.1.1 Encoding BigNumber values as byte strings (BigNumberToB)

We use the I2OSP algorithm as defined in \[RFC3447\] for converting big numbers to byte arrays. The bytes from the big endian encoded (non-negative) number \(n\) will be copied right-aligned into the buffer area \(b\). The unused bytes will be set to 0. Negative values will not occur due to the construction of the algorithms.

#### EXAMPLE 1: Converting BigNumber \(n\) to byte string \(b\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>b0</th>
<th>b1</th>
<th>b2</th>
<th>b3</th>
<th>b4</th>
<th>b5</th>
<th>b6</th>
<th>b7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>n0</td>
<td>n1</td>
<td>n2</td>
<td>n3</td>
<td>n4</td>
<td>n5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### EXAMPLE 2: Algorithm for converting BigNumber to byte strings

```java
ByteArray BigNumberToB(
    BigNumber inVal, // IN: number to convert
    int size         // IN: size of the output.
){
    ByteArray buffer = new ByteArray(size);
    int oversize = size - inVal.length;
    if (oversize < 0)
        return null;
    for (int i=oversize; i > 0; i--)
        buffer[i] = 0;
    ByteCopy( inVal.bytes, &buffer[oversize], inVal.length);
    return buffer;
}
```

#### EXAMPLE 3: Converting ECPoint \(P\) to byte string

\((x, y) = \text{ECPointGetAffineCoordinates}(P)\)

\(\text{len} = G1\.byteLength\)

byte string = 0x04 | BigIntegerToB(x,len) | BigIntegerToB(y,len)

#### EXAMPLE 4: Converting ECPoint2 \(P2\) to byte string

\((cx, cy) = \text{ECPointGetAffineCoordinates}(P2)\)

\(\text{len} = G2\.byteLength\)

byte string = 0x04 | BigIntegerToB(cx.a,len) | BigIntegerToB(cx.b,len)

### 3.1.2 Encoding ECPoint values as byte strings (ECPointToB)

We use the ANSI X9.62 Point-to-Octet-String \[ECDSA-ANSI\] conversion using the expanded format, i.e. the format where the compression byte (i.e. 0x04 for expanded) is followed by the encoding of the affine x coordinate, followed by the encoding of the affine y coordinate.

#### EXAMPLE 3: Converting ECPoint \(P\) to byte string

\((x, y) = \text{ECPointGetAffineCoordinates}(P)\)

\(\text{len} = G1\.byteLength\)

byte string = 0x04 | BigIntegerToB(x,len) | BigIntegerToB(y,len)

### 3.1.3 Encoding ECPoint2 values as byte strings (ECPoint2ToB)

The type \textbf{ECPoint2} denotes a point on the sextic twist of a BN elliptic curve over\(\mathbb{F}(q^2)\), see section 4.1 Supported Curves for ECDAA. Each \textbf{ECPoint2} is represented by a pair \((a, b)\) of elements of \(\mathbb{F}(q)\).

The group zero element is always encoded (using the encoding rules as described below) as an element having all components set to zero (i.e. \(a=0, b=0\)).

We always assume normalized (non-zero) ECPoint2 values (i.e. \(cz = 1\)) before encoding them. Non-zero values are encoded using the expanded format (i.e. 0x04 for expanded) followed by the \(x\) followed by the \(y\) value. This leads to the concatenation of 0x04 followed by the first element \((cx.a)\) and second element \((cx.b)\) of the pair of \(x\) followed by the first element \((cy.a)\) and second element \((cy.b)\) of the pair of \(y\). All individual numbers are padded to the same length (i.e. the maximum byte length of all relevant 4 numbers).

#### EXAMPLE 4: Converting ECPoint2 \(P2\) to byte string

\((cx, cy) = \text{ECPointGetAffineCoordinates}(P2)\)

\(\text{len} = G2\.byteLength\)

byte string = 0x04 | BigIntegerToB(cx.a,len) | BigIntegerToB(cx.b,len)
3.2 Global ECDAA System Parameters

1. Groups $G^1$, $G^2$, and $G_T$, of sufficiently large prime order $p$
2. Two generators $P$ and $P_2$, such that $G^1 = \langle P \rangle$ and $G^2 = \langle P_2 \rangle$
3. A bilinear pairing $e : G^1 \times G^2 \rightarrow G_T$. We propose the use of "ate" pairing (see [BarNae-2006]). For example source code on this topic, see BNPairings.
4. Hash function $H$ with $H : \{0, 1\}^* \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_p$.
5. Hash function $H^{G^1}$ with $H : \{0, 1\}^* \rightarrow G^1$.
6. $(G^1, P, p, H, H^{G^1})$ are installed in all authenticators implementing FIDO ECDAA attestation.

**Definition of $G^1$, $G^2$, $G_T$, Pairings, hash function $H$ and $H^{G^1}$**

See section 4.1 Supported Curves for ECDAA.

3.3 Issuer Specific ECDAA Parameters

ECDAA Issuer Parameters parl

1. Randomly generated ECDAA Issuer private key $isk = (x, y)$ with $[x, y] = RAND(p)$.
2. ECDAA Issuer public key $(X, Y)$, with $X = P_2^x$ and $Y = P_2^y$.
3. A proof that the ECDAA Issuer key was correctly computed
   1. BigInteger $r_x = RAND(p)$
   2. BigInteger $r_y = RAND(p)$
   3. ECPoint2 $U_x = P_2^{r_x}$
   4. ECPoint2 $U_y = P_2^{r_y}$
   5. BigInteger $c = H(U_x|U_y|P_2^x|X|Y)$
   6. BigInteger $s_x = r_x + c \cdot x \pmod{p}$
   7. BigInteger $s_y = r_y + c \cdot y \pmod{p}$
4. $ipk = X, Y, c, s_x, s_y$

Whenever a party uses ipk for the first time, it must first verify that it was correctly generated:

$$H(P_2^{s_x} \cdot X^{-c} | P_2^{s_y} \cdot Y^{-c} | P_2^x | X | Y) = c$$

**NOTE**

$$P_2^{s_x} \cdot X^{-c} = P_2^{r_x + cz} \cdot P_2^{cz} = P_2^{r_x} = U_x$$

$$P_2^{s_y} \cdot Y^{-c} = P_2^{r_y + cq} \cdot P_2^{cq} = P_2^{r_y} = U_y$$

The ECDAA Issuer public key ipk must be dedicated to a single authenticator model.

We use the element $c$ of ipk as an identifier for the ECDAA Issuer public key (called **ECDAA Issuer public key identifier**).

3.4 ECDAA-Join

**NOTE**

One ECDAA-Join operation is required once in the lifetime of an authenticator prior to the first registration of a credential.

In order to use ECDAA, the authenticator must first receive ECDAA credentials from an ECDAA Issuer. This is done by the ECDAA-Join operation. This operation needs to be performed a single time (before the first credential registration can take place). After the ECDAA-Join, the authenticator will use the ECDAA-Sign operation as part of each FIDO Registration. The ECDAA Issuer is not involved in this step. ECDAA plays no role in FIDO Authentication / Transaction Confirmation operations.

In order to use ECDAA, (at least) one ECDAA Issuer is needed. The approach specified in this document easily scales to multiple ECDAA Issuers, e.g. one per authenticator vendor. FIDO lets the authenticator vendor choose any ECDAA Issuer (similar to his current freedom for selecting any PKI infrastructure/service provider to issuing attestation certificates required for FIDO Basic Attestation).

* All ECDAA-Join operations (of the related authenticators) are performed with one of the ECDAA Issuer entities.
* Each ECDAA Issuer has a set of public parameters, i.e. ECDAA public key material. The related Attestation Trust Anchor is contained in the metadata of each authenticator model identified by its AAGUID.

There are two different implementation options relevant for the authenticator vendors (the authenticator vendor can freely choose them):

1. In-Factory ECDAA-Join
2. Remote ECDAA-Join and

In the first case, physical proximity is used to locally establish the trust between the ECDAA Issuer and the authenticator (e.g. using a key provisioning
In the second case, some credential is required to remotely establish the trust between the ECDAA issuer and the authenticator. As this operation is performed once and only with a single ECDAA issuer, privacy is preserved and an authenticator specific credential can and should be used.

Not all ECDAA authenticators might be able to add their authenticator model IDs (e.g. AAGUID) to the registration assertion (e.g. TPMs). In all cases, the ECDAA issuer will be able to derive the exact the authenticator model from either the credential or the physically proximate authenticator. So the ECDAA issuer root key must be dedicated to a single authenticator model.

### 3.4.1 ECDAA-Join Algorithm

*This section is normative.*

1. The authenticator asks the ECDAA issuer for the B value of the credential.
2. The ECDAA issuer chooses a nonce BigInteger \( m = RAND(p) \).
3. The ECDAA issuer computes the B value of the credential as \( B = H^G(m) \) and sends \((sc, yc) = HG1 Pre(m)\) to the authenticator.
4. The authenticator chooses and stores the ECDAA private key BigInteger \( sk = RAND(p) \).
5. The authenticator re-computes \( B = (h(sc), yc) \).
6. The authenticator computes its ECDAA public key ECPoint \( Q = B^k \).
7. The authenticator proves knowledge of \( sk \) as follows
   - BigInteger \( r^1 = RAND(p) \)
   - ECPoint \( U^1 = B^{r^1} \)
   - BigInteger \( c^2 = H(U^1P\mid Q\mid m) \)
   - BigInteger \( n = RAND(p) \)
   - BigInteger \( c^1 = H(n\mid c^2) \)
   - BigInteger \( s^1 = r^1 + c^1 \cdot sk \)
8. The authenticator sends \( Q, c^1, s^1, n \) via the ASM to the ECDAA issuer.
9. The ECDAA issuer verifies that the authenticator is "authentic" and that \( Q \) was indeed generated by the authenticator. In the case of an in-factory Join, this might be trivial; in the case of a remote Join this typically requires the use of other cryptographic methods. Since ECDAA-Join is a one-time operation, unlinkability is not a concern for that.
10. The ECDAA issuer verifies that \( Q \in G^1 \) and verifies \( H(n\mid H(B^{r^1} \cdot Q^{-c^1} \mid P\mid Q\mid m)) \equiv c^1 \) (check proof-of-possession of private key).

### NOTE

\[ B^{s^1} \cdot Q^{-c^1} = B^{s^1+c^1sk} \cdot Q^{-c^1} = B^{s^1+c^1sk} \cdot B^{-c^1sk} = B^{s^1} = U^1 \]

11. The ECDAA issuer creates credential \((A, B, C, D)\) as follows
   - ECPoint \( A = B^{1/y} \)
   - ECPoint \( B \) as computed in the beginning.
   - ECPoint \( C = (A \cdot Q)^y \)
   - ECPoint \( D = Q \)
12. The ECDAA issuer sends \( A, C \) to the authenticator. The authenticator still knows \( B \) and \( D \).
13. The authenticator checks that \( A, C \in G^1 \) and \( A \neq 1G^1 \).
14. The authenticator checks \( e(A, Y) \equiv e(B, P^y) \)

### NOTE

\[ e(A, Y) = e(B^{1/y}, P^y) = e(B, P^y) = e(B, P^y); \]

15. and the authenticator checks \( e(C, P^y) \equiv e(A \cdot D, X) \)

### NOTE

\[ e(C, P^y) = e((A \cdot Q)^y, P^y); e(A \cdot D, X) = e(A \cdot Q, P^x) = e((A \cdot Q)^y, P^x) \]

16. The authenticator stores credential \( A, B, C, D \)

### 3.4.2 ECDAA-Join Split between Authenticator and ASM
This section is non-normative.

NOTE

If this join is not in-factory, the value \( Q \) must be authenticated by the authenticator. Upon receiving this value, the ECDAA Issuer must verify that this authenticator did not join before.

1. The ASM asks the ECDAA Issuer for the B value of the credential.
2. The ECDAA Issuer chooses a nonce BigInteger \( m = \text{RAND}(p) \)
3. The ECDAA Issuer computes the B value of the credential as \( B = H^G_1(m) \)
4. The ECDAA Issuer sends \((sc, yc) = H G_1 \text{pre}(m) \) to the ASM.
5. The ASM forwards \((sc, yc) \) to the authenticator
6. The authenticator chooses and stores the private key BigInteger \( sk = \text{RAND}(p) \)
7. The authenticator re-computes \( B = (H(sc), yc) \)
8. The authenticator computes its ECDAA public key ECPoint \( Q = B^sk \)
9. The authenticator proves knowledge of \( sk \) as follows
   1. BigInteger \( r^1 = \text{RAND}(p) \)
   2. ECPoint \( U^1 = B^{r^1} \)
   3. BigInteger \( c^2 = H((U^1)^n P)(m) \)
   4. BigInteger \( n = \text{RAND}(p) \)
   5. BigInteger \( c^1 = H(n(c^2)) \)
   6. BigInteger \( s^1 = r^1 + c^1 \cdot sk \)
10. The authenticator sends \( Q, c_1, s_1, n \) to the ASM, who forwards it to the ECDAA Issuer.
11. The ECDAA Issuer verifies that the authenticator is "authentic" and that \( Q \) was indeed generated by the authenticator. In the case of an in-factory Join, this might be trivial; in the case of a remote Join this typically requires the use of other cryptographic methods. Since ECDAA-Join is a one-time operation, unlinkability is not a concern for that.
12. The ECDAA Issuer verifies that \( Q \in G_1 \) and verifies \( H(n)H(B^B \cdot Q - c_1 P_s | Q | m)) \equiv c_1 \).
13. The ECDAA Issuer creates credential \((A, B, C, D)\) as follows
   1. ECPoint \( A = B^{1/r} \)
   2. ECPoint \( B \) as computed in the beginning.
   3. ECPoint \( C = (A \cdot Q)^e \)
   4. ECPoint \( D = Q \)
14. The ECDAA Issuer sends \( A, C \) to the ASM. The ASM remembered \( B \) and \( D = Q \) from an earlier step.
15. The ASM checks that \( A, B, C, D \in G_1 \) and \( A \neq 1^G_1 \)
16. The ASM checks \( e(A, Y) \equiv e(B, P_s) \)
17. and the ASM checks that \( e(C, P_s) \equiv e(A \cdot D, X) \)
18. The ASM stores \( A, B, C, D \) and sends \( A, C \) to the authenticator. The authenticator still knows \( B \) and \( D \).
19. The authenticator stores \( B, D \) and ignores further join requests.

NOTE

These values belong to the ECDAA secret key \( sk \). They should persist even in the case of a factory reset.

3.4.3 ECDAA-Join Split between TPM and ASM

This section is non-normative.

NOTE

The Endorsement key credential (EK-C) and TPM2_ActivateCredentials are used for supporting the remote Join.

This description is based on the principles described in [TPMv2-Part1] section 24 and [Arthur-Challener-2015], page 109 ("Activating a Credential").

1. The ASM asks the ECDAA Issuer for the B value of the credential.
2. The ECDAA Issuer chooses a nonce BigInteger \( m = \text{RAND}(p) \).
3. The ECDAA Issuer computes the B value of the credential as \( B = H^G_1(m) \)
4. The ECDAA Issuer sends \((sc, yc) = H G_1 \text{pre}(m) \) to the ASM.
5. The ASM
   1. instructs the TPM to create a restricted key by calling TPM2_Create, giving the public key template \text{TPMT_PUBLIC} \text{TPMv2-Part2} (including the public key \( P_s \) in field \text{unique}) to the ASM.
   2. re-computes \( B = (H(sc), yc) \)
3. retrieves TPM Endorsement Key Certificate (EK-C) from the TPM
4. calls TPM2_Commit(keyhandle, P1) where keyhandle is the handle of the restricted key generated before (see above), P1 is set to (B.x,B.y), and s2 and y2 are set to B.x and B.y respectively. This call returns K, E, and ctr; where $K = B^k = Q$, $E = B^e$ is used as $U^1$ value.

5. computes BigInteger $c^2 = H(U^1|P|Q|m)$
6. calls TPM2_Sign($c^2$, ctr), returning $s1, n$.

7. computes BigInteger $c^1 = H(n|c2)$
8. sends EK-C, TPMT_PUBLIC (including Q in field unique), $c^1$, $s1$, $n$ to the ECDAA Issuer.

6. The ECDAA Issuer
1. verifies EK-C and its certificate chain. As a result the ECDAA Issuer knows the TPM model related to EK-C.
2. verifies that this EK-C was not used in a (successful) Join before
3. Verifies that the objectAttributes in TPMT_PUBLIC matches the following flags:
   - fixedTPM = 1;
   - fixedParent = 1;
   - sensitiveDataOrigin = 1;
   - encryptedDuplication = 0;
   - restricted = 1;
   - decrypt = 0;
   - sign = 1.
4. examines the public key Q, i.e. it verifies that $Q \in G$
5. checks
   $$H(n|H(B^k \cdot Q^{c2}|P|Q|m)) = c1$$
6. generates the ECDAA credential $(A, B, C, D)$ as follows
   1. ECPoint $A = B^{1/y}$
   2. ECPoint $B$ as computed in the beginning.
   3. ECPoint $C = (A \cdot Q)^x$
   4. ECPoint $D = Q$

7. generates a secret (derived from a seed) and wraps the credential $A, B, C, D$ using that secret.
8. encrypts the seed using the public key included in EK-C.
9. uses seed and name in KDFa (see [TPMv2-Part2] section 24.4) to derive HMAC and symmetric encryption key. Wrap the secret in symmetric encryption key and protect it with the HMAC key.

7. The ASM instructs the TPM (by calling TPM2_ActivateCredential) to
1. decrypt the seed using the TPM Endorsement key
2. compute the name (for the ECDAA attestation key)
3. use the seed in KDFa (with name) to derive the HMAC key and the symmetric encryption key.
4. use the symmetric encryption key to unwrap the secret.

8. The ASM
1. unwraps the credential $A, B, C, D$ using the secret received from the TPM.
2. checks that $A, B, C, D \in G^1$ and $A \neq 1^G$
3. checks $e(A, Y) = e(B, P_e)$ and $e(C, P_e) = e(A \cdot D, X)$
4. stores $A, B, C, D$ as follows

3.5 ECDAA-Sign

**NOTE**
The parameter name in KDFa is derived from TPMT_PUBLIC, see [TPMv2-Part1], section 16.

**NOTE**
One ECDAA-Sign operation is required for the client-side environment whenever a new credential is being registered at a relying party.

3.5.1 ECDAA-Sign Algorithm

*This section is normative.*

$$\text{(signature, KRD)} = \text{EcdaaSign(String AppID)}$$

**Parameters**
- $p$: System parameter prime order of group G1 (global constant)
- AppID: FIDO AppID (i.e. https-URL of TrustedFacets object)

**Algorithm outline**
1. KRD = BuildAndEncodeKRD(); // all traditional Registration tasks are here
2. BigNumber $l = \text{RAND}(p)$
3. ECPPoint $R = A^l$;
4. ECPPoint $S = B^l$;
5. ECPPoint $T = C^l$;
6. ECPPoint $W = D^l$;
7. BigInteger \( r = \text{RAND}(p) \)
8. ECPoint \( U = S^r \)
9. BigInteger \( c_2 = H(U | S | W | \text{AppID} | H(KRD)) \)
10. BigInteger \( n = \text{RAND}(p) \)
11. \( c = H(n | c_2) \)
12. BigInteger \( s = r + c \cdot sk \pmod{p} \)
13. signature = (c, s, R, S, T, W, n)
14. return (signature, KRD)

3.5.2 ECDAA-Sign Split between Authenticator and ASM

This section is non-normative.

Algorithm outline

1. The ASM randomizes the credential
   1. BigNumber \( l = \text{RAND}(p) \)
   2. ECPoint \( R = A^l \)
   3. ECPoint \( S = B^l \)
   4. ECPoint \( T = C^l \)
   5. ECPoint \( W = D^l \)
2. The ASM sends \( l \), \text{AppID} to the authenticator
3. The authenticator performs the following tasks
   1. \( \text{KRD} = \text{BuildAndEncodeKRD}(); \) // all traditional Registration tasks are here
   2. ECPoint \( S' = B^l \)
   3. ECPoint \( W' = D^l \)
   4. BigInteger \( r = \text{RAND}(p) \)
   5. ECPoint \( U = S^r \)
   6. BigInteger \( c_2 = H(U | S' | W' | \text{AppID} | H(KRD)) \)
   7. BigInteger \( n = \text{RAND}(p) \)
   8. \( c = H(n | c_2) \)
   9. BigInteger \( s = r + c \cdot sk \pmod{p} \)
10. Send \( c, s, KRD, n \) to the ASM
4. The ASM sets signature = (c, s, R, S, T, W, n) and outputs (signature, KRD)

3.5.3 ECDAA-Sign Split between TPM and ASM

This section is non-normative.

NOTE
This algorithm is for the special case of a TPMv2 as authenticator. This case requires both the TPM and ASM to be honest for anonymity. Only the TPM must be trusted for unforgeability (see [CCDLDNU2017-DAA]).
7. The ASM sets signature = (c, s, R, S, T, W, n) and outputs (signature, KRD)

3.6 ECDAA-Verify Operation

This section is normative.

NOTE
One ECDAA-Verify operation is required for the FIDO Server as part of each FIDO Registration.

boolean EcdaaVerify(signature, AppID, KRD, ModelName)

Parameters
- p: System parameter prime order of group $G_1$ (global constant)
- $P$: System parameter generator of group $G_1$ (global constant)
- signature: $(c, s, R, S, T, W, n)$
- AppID: FIDO AppID
- KRD: Attestation Data object as defined in other specifications.
- ModelName: the claimed FIDO authenticator model (i.e. either AAID or AAGUID)

Algorithm outline
1. Based on the claimed ModelName, look up $X, Y$ from trusted source
2. Check that $R, S, T, W \in G, R \neq 1_G, S \neq 1_G$.
3. $H(n \mid H(S \cdot W^{-c} \mid |W| \mid |S| \mid |W| \mid |AppID| \mid H(KRD))) \equiv c$; fail if not equal
4. $e(R, Y) \equiv e(S, P)$; fail if not equal
5. $e(T, P) \equiv e(R \cdot W, X)$; fail if not equal
6. for (all sk' on RogueList) do if $W \equiv S^{a_{sk'}}$ fail;
7. // perform all other processing steps for new credential registration
8. return true;

4. FIDO ECDAA Object Formats and Algorithm Details

This section is normative.

4.1 Supported Curves for ECDAA

Definition of $G_1$
G1 is an elliptic curve group $E : y^2 = x^3 + ax + b$ over $F(q)$ with $a = 0$.

**Definition of G2**

G2 is the p-torsion subgroup of $E'(F'_p)$ where $E'$ is a sextic twist of $E$. With $E' : y^2 = x^3 + b'$.

An element of $F'(q)^2$ is represented by a pair $(a,b)$ where $a + bX$ is an element of $F'(q)[X]/<X^2 + 1>$. We use angle brackets $<Y>$ to signify the ideal generated by the enclosed value.

**NOTE**

In the literature the pair $(a,b)$ is sometimes also written as a complex number $a + bi$.

**Definition of GT**

GT is an order-p subgroup of $F'_p$.

**Pairings**

We propose the use of Ate pairings as they are efficient (more efficient than Tate pairings) on Barreto-Naehrig curves [DevScoDah2007].

**Supported BN curves**


BN curves have a Modulus $q = 36 \cdot u^4 + 36 \cdot u^3 + 24 \cdot u^2 + 6 \cdot u + 1$ [ISO15946-5] and a related order of the group $p = 36 \cdot u^4 + 36 \cdot u^3 + 18 \cdot u^2 + 6 \cdot u + 1$ [ISO15946-5].

- **TPMv2-Part4**
  - $E$ is represented by a pair $(a,b)$ where $a + bX$ is an element of $F(q)[X]/<X^2 + 1>$.
  - Modulus $q = 115 792 089 237 314 936 872 688 561 244 471 742 058 375 878 355 761 205 198 700 409 522 629 664 518 163$
  - Group order $p = 115 792 089 237 314 936 872 688 561 244 471 742 058 035 595 988 840 268 488 787 999 429 535 617 037$
  - $p$ and $q$ have length of 256 bit each.
  - $b = 3$
  - $P_{256} = (x=1, y=2)$
  - $b' = (a=3, b=3)$
  - $P_{256} = (x,y)$, with $P_2.256 = (x=114 909 019 869 825 495 805 094 438 766 505 779 201 460 871 441 403 638 227 802 688 522 624 680 861 435$, $b=35 743 363 727 580 634 541 930 638 464 681 913 209 705 880 605 623 913 174 726 326 071 061 488 811)$

- **TPMv2-Part4**
  - $E$ is represented by a pair $(a,b)$ where $a + bX$ is an element of $F(q)[X]/<X^2 + 1>$.
  - Modulus $q = 641 593 209 463 000 238 284 923 228 689 168 801 117 629 789 043 238 356 871 360 716 989 515 584 497 239 494 051 781$
  - Group order $p = 641 593 209 463 000 238 284 923 228 689 168 801 117 629 789 043 238 356 871 360 716 989 515$
  - $p$ and $q$ have length of 256 bit each.
  - $b = 257$
  - $P_{638} = (x=641 593 209 463 000 238 284 923 228 689 168 801 117 629 789 043 238 356 871 360 716 989 515 584 497 239 494 051 781 991 794 253 619 096 481 315 470 262 437 432 019 869 642 631 650 152 075 067 222 331 951 354 925 301 839 708 740 457 083 469 793$
  - $p$ and $q$ have length of 638 bit each.
  - $b = 1542$

- **ECC-SDR-P256**
  - $E$ is represented by a pair $(a,b)$ where $a + bX$ is an element of $F(q)[X]/<X^2 + 1>$.
  - Modulus $q = 36 \cdot u^4 + 36 \cdot u^3 + 24 \cdot u^2 + 6 \cdot u + 1$ [ISO15946-5] and a related order of the group $p = 36 \cdot u^4 + 36 \cdot u^3 + 18 \cdot u^2 + 6 \cdot u + 1$ [ISO15946-5].
• $P_{\text{DSD}_256} = (1, 2)$
• $b' = (a=3, b=8)$
• $P_{\text{DSD}_256} = (x, y)$, with

• The hash algorithm $H$ uses
  • $H(x) = \text{SHA256}(x) \mod p$ or $H(x) = \text{SHA512}(x) \mod p$ as hash algorithm $H:\{0,1\}^* \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_p$.
  • The argument of the hash function must always be converted to a byte string using the appropriate encoding function specific in section 3.1 Object Encodings, e.g. according to section 3.1.3 Encoding ECPoint2 values as byte strings (ECPoint2ToB) in the case of ECPoint2 points.

- **NOTE**
  - Spaces are used inside numbers to improve readability.

- **NOTE**
  - We don't use IEEE 1363.3 section 6.1.1 IHF1-SHA with security parameter $t$ (e.g. $t=128$ or 256) as it is more complex and not supported by TPMv2.

• $P_{\text{ISO}_256} = (x, y)$, with

• $X_{\text{ISO}_256}$, $Y_{\text{ISO}_256}$

- **NOTE**
  - The values have been generated using $u=138,919,694,570,470,098,040,331,481,282,401,535,727$.

- **NOTE**
  - $p$ and $q$ have length of 512 bit each.

• $P_{\text{ISO}_512} = (x, y)$, with

• $H_G : \{0, 1\}^* \rightarrow G_1$, where $G_1$ is an elliptic curve group $E : y^2 = x^3 + b$ over $\mathbb{GF}(q)$ with cofactor = 1. Given a message $m \in \{0, 1\}^*$, $H_G$ can be computed as follows:

  - **ECPoint $p = H_G$(String $m$)**
    1. Set $i = 0$ be a 32-bit unsigned integer.
    2. Compute $x = H(\text{BigNumberToB}(i, 4) \mid m)$
    3. Compute $z = x^3 + b \mod q$
    4. Compute $y = \text{sqrt}(z) \mod q$. If $y$ does not exist, set $i = i+1$, repeat step 2 if $i < 2^{32}$, otherwise, report failure.
    5. Set $y = \min(y, q - y)$.
    6. return ECPoint($x, y$)

  - **(String sc, BigNumber yc) = $H_G$(pre(String m))**
    1. Set $i = 0$ be a 32-bit unsigned integer.
    2. Compute $x = H(\text{BigNumberToB}(i, 4) \mid m)$
    3. Compute $z = x^3 + b \mod q$
    4. Compute $y = \text{sqrt}(z) \mod q$. If $y$ does not exist, set $i = i+1$, repeat step 2 if $i < 2^{32}$, otherwise, report failure.
    5. Set $y = \min(y, q - y)$.
    6. Set $sc$ to BigNumberToB($i, 4) \mid m$.
    7. Set $yc$ to $y$.
    8. return $(sc, yc)$

- **NOTE**
  - The ASM on the FIDO User device platform can help the authenticator compute $H_G(m)$, yet the authenticator verifies the computation as follows: Given $m$, the ASM runs the above algorithm. For a successful execution, let $sc = (\text{istr} \mid m)$ and $yc$ be the $y$ value in the last step. The ASM sends $sc$ and
yc to the authenticator. The authenticator computes HG1(m) = (H(sc), yc).

Given the value sc, the original message m can be recomputed by skipping the first 4 bytes.

4.2 ECDAA Algorithm Names

We define the following JWS-style algorithm names (see [RFC7515]):

**ED256**
- **TPM_ECC_BN_P256** curve, using SHA256 as hash algorithm H.

**ED256-2**
- **ECC_BN_DSD_P256** curve, using SHA256 as hash algorithm H.

**ED512**
- **ECC_BN_ISOP512** curve, using SHA512 as hash algorithm H.

**ED638**
- **TPM_ECC_BN_P638** curve, using SHA512 as hash algorithm H.

4.3 ecdaaSignature object

The fields c and s both have length N. The fields R, S, T, W have equal length (2*N+1 each).

In the case of BN_P256 curve (with key length N=32 bytes), the fields R, S, T, W have length 2*32+1=65 bytes. The fields c and s have length N=32 each.

The ecdaaSignature object is a binary object generated as the concatenation of the binary fields in the order described below (total length of 356 bytes for 256bit curves):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Length (in Bytes)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UINT8[]</td>
<td>ECDAA_Signature_c</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT8[]</td>
<td>ECDAA_Signature_s</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT8[]</td>
<td>ECDAA_Signature_n</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT8[]</td>
<td>ECDAA_Signature_R</td>
<td>2*N+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT8[]</td>
<td>ECDAA_Signature_s</td>
<td>2*N+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT8[]</td>
<td>ECDAA_Signature_T</td>
<td>2*N+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT8[]</td>
<td>ECDAA_Signature_W</td>
<td>2*N+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Considerations

This section is non-normative.

A detailed security analysis of this algorithm can be found in [FIDO-DAA-Security-Proof].

5.1 Algorithms and Key Sizes

The proposed algorithms and key sizes are chosen such that compatibility to TPMv2 is possible.

5.2 Indicating the Authenticator Model

Some authenticators (e.g. TPMv2) do not have the ability to include their model (i.e. vendor ID and model name) in attested messages (i.e. the to-be-signed part of the registration assertion). The TPM's endorsement key certificate typically contains that information directly or at least it allows the model to be derived from the endorsement key certificate.

In FIDO, the relying party expects the ability to cryptographically verify the authenticator model.

We require the ECDAA Issuers public key (ipk=(X,Y,c,sx,sy)) to be dedicated to one single authenticator model (e.g. as identified by AAID or AAGUID).

5.3 Revocation

If the private ECDAA attestation key sk of an authenticator has been leaked, it can be revoked by adding its value to a RogueList.

The ECDAA-Verifier (i.e. FIDO Server) check for such revocations. See section 3.6 ECDAA-Verify Operation.

The ECDAA Issuer is expected to check revocation by other means:

1. if ECDAA-Join is done in-factory, it is assumed that produced devices are known to be uncompromised (at time of production).
2. if a remote ECDAA-Join is performed, the (remote)ECDAA Issuer already must use a different method to remotely authenticate the authenticator (e.g. using some endorsement key). We expect the ECDAA Issuer to perform a revocation check based on that information. This is even more flexible as it does not require access to the authenticator ECDAA private key sk.

5.4 Pairing Algorithm

The pairing algorithm e needs to be used by the ASM as part of the Join process and by the verifier (i.e. FIDO relying party) as part of the verification (i.e. FIDO registration) process.

The result of such a pairing operation is only compared to the result of another pairing operation computed by the same entity. As a consequence, it doesn't matter whether the ASM and the verifier use the exact same pairings or not (as long as they both use valid pairings).

5.5 Performance

For performance reasons the calculation of Sig2=(R, S, T, W) may be performed by the ASM running on the FIDO user device (as opposed to inside the authenticator). See section 3.5.2 ECDAA-Sign Split between Authenticator and ASM.

The cryptographic computations to be performed inside the authenticator are limited to G1. The ECDAA Issuer has to perform two G2 point multiplications for computing the public key. The Verifier (i.e. FIDO relying party) has to perform G1 operations and two pairing operations.

5.6 Binary Concatentation

We use a simple byte-wise concatenation function for the different parameters, i.e. H(a,b) = H(a | b).

This approach is as secure as the underlying hash algorithm since the authenticator controls the length of the (fixed-length) values (e.g. U, S, W). The AppID is provided externally and has unverified structure and length. However, it is only followed by a fixed length entry - the (system defined) hash of KRD. As a consequence, no parts of the AppID would ever be confused with the fixed length value.

5.7 IANA Considerations

This specification registers the algorithm names “ED256”, “ED512”, and “ED638” defined in section 4, FIDO ECDAA Object Formats and Algorithm Details with the IANA JSON Web Algorithms registry as defined in section "Cryptographic Algorithms for Digital Signatures and MACs" in [RFC7518].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Algorithm Name</th>
<th>“ED256”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Algorithm Description</td>
<td>FIDO ECDAA algorithm based on TPM_ECC_BN_P256 [TPMv2-Part4] curve using SHA256 hash algorithm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOSE Implementation Location(s)</td>
<td>“alg”, i.e. used with JWS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Controller</td>
<td>Optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification Documents</td>
<td>Sections 3, FIDO ECDAA Attestation and 4, FIDO ECDAA Object Formats and Algorithm Details of [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algorithm Analysis Document(s)</td>
<td>[FIDO-DAA-Security-Proof]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Algorithm Name</th>
<th>“ED512”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JOSE Implementation Location(s)</td>
<td>“alg”, i.e. used with JWS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Controller</td>
<td>Optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification Documents</td>
<td>[FIDO-DAA-Security-Proof]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A. References

A.1 Normative references


A.2 Informative references


[BFGSW-2011] D. Bernhard; G. Fuchsbauer; E. Ghadafi; N. P. Smart; B. Warinschi. Anonymous Attestation with User-controlled Linkability. 2011. URL:


[XYZ-2014] Li Xi; Kang Yang; Zhenfeng Zhang; Dengguo Feng. DAA-Related APIs in TPM 2.0 Revisited, in T. Holz and S. Ioannidis (Eds.) 2014. URL:
FIDO Security Reference

FIDO Alliance Implementation Draft 27 February 2018

This version: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-id-20180227/fido-security-ref-v2.0-id-20180227.html
Previous version: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-ps-20170927/fido-security-ref-v2.0-ps-20170927.html
Editor: Rolf Lindemann, Nok Nok Labs, Inc.
Contributors:
  - Davit Bachdjsaryan, Nok Nok Labs, Inc.
  - Brad Hill, PayPal, Inc.
  - Dr. Joshua E. Hill, InfoGard Laboratories
  - Douglas Biggs, InfoGard Laboratories
Copyright © 2013-2018 FIDO Alliance All Rights Reserved.

Abstract

This document analyzes the security properties of FIDO UAF, FIDO U2F and FIDO 2 (i.e. CTAP and Web Authentication) specifications.

Status of This Document

This section describes the status of this document at the time of its publication. Other documents may supersede this document. A list of current FIDO Alliance publications and the latest revision of this technical report can be found in the FIDO Alliance specifications index at https://www.fidoalliance.org/specifications/.

This document was published by the FIDO Alliance as a Implementation Draft. This document is intended to become a FIDO Alliance Proposed Standard. If you wish to make comments regarding this document, please Contact Us. All comments are welcome.

This Implementation Draft Specification has been prepared by FIDO Alliance, Inc. Permission is hereby granted to use the Specification solely for the purpose of implementing the Specification. No rights are granted to prepare derivative works of this Specification. Entities seeking permission to reproduce portions of this Specification for other uses must contact the FIDO Alliance to determine whether an appropriate license for such use is available.

Implementation of certain elements of this Specification may require licenses under third party intellectual property rights, including without limitation, patent rights. The FIDO Alliance, Inc. and its Members and any other contributors to the Specification are not, and shall not be held, responsible in any manner for identifying or failing to identify any or all such third party intellectual property rights.

THIS FIDO ALLIANCE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Table of Contents

- 1. Notation
  - 1.1 Key Words
- 2. Introduction
  - 2.1 Intended Audience
- 3. Attack Classification
- 4. FIDO Security Goals
  - 4.1 Assets to be Protected
- 5. FIDO Security Measures
  - 5.1 Relation between Measures and Goals
- 6. FIDO Security Assumptions
  - 6.1 Discussion
- 7. Threat Analysis
  - 7.1 Threats to Client Side
    - 7.1.1 Exploiting User's pattern matching weaknesses
    - 7.1.2 Threats to the User Device, FIDO Client and Relying Party Client Applications
    - 7.1.3 Threat to the communication between Client and FIDO Authenticator
  - 7.2 Threats to FIDO Authenticator
  - 7.3 Threats to Relying Party
    - 7.3.1 Threats to FIDO Server Data
  - 7.4 Threats to the Secure Channel between Client and Relying Party
    - 7.4.1 ExploitingWeaknesses in the Secure Transport of FIDO Messages
1. Notation

Type names, attribute names and element names are written as code.

String literals are enclosed in "", e.g. "UAF-TLV".

In formulas we use "|" to denote byte wise concatenation operations.

UAF specific terminology used in this document is defined in [FIDO Glossary].

1.1 Key Words

The key words "must", "must not", "required", "shall", "shall not", "should", "should not", "recommended", "may", and "optional" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].

2. Introduction

This document analyzes the security properties of the FIDO UAF [UAF Protocol], FIDO U2F [U2F Overview] and FIDO 2 (i.e. CTAP2 [FIDO CTAP] and Web Authentication [WebAuthn]). Although a brief architectural summary is provided below, readers should familiarize themselves with the FIDO Glossary of Terms [FIDO Glossary] for definitions of terms used throughout. For technical details of various aspects of the architecture, readers should refer to the FIDO Alliance specifications in the Bibliography.

![Fig. 1 FIDO Reference Architecture](image)

Conceptually, FIDO involves a conversation between a computing environment controlled by a Relying Party and one controlled by the user to be authenticated. The Relying Party's environment consists conceptually of at least a web server and the server-side portions of a web application, plus a FIDO Server. The FIDO Server has a trust store, containing the (public) trust anchors for the attestation of FIDO Authenticators. The users' environment, referred to as the FIDO user device, consists of one or more FIDO Authenticators, a piece of software called the FIDO Client that is the endpoint for UAF and U2F conversations, and User Agent software. The User Agent software may be a browser hosting a web application delivered by the Relying Party, or it may be a standalone application delivered by the Relying Party. In either case, the FIDO Client, while a conceptually distinct entity, may actually be implemented in whole or part within the boundaries of the User Agent.

In the case of Web Authentication, the Web Browser implements the major parts of the FIDO Client functionality and the underlying operating system (platform) implements the ASM parts.

2.1 Intended Audience

This document assumes a technical audience that is proficient with security analysis of computing systems and network protocols as well as the specifics of the FIDO architecture and protocol families. It discusses the security goals, security measures, security assumptions and a series of threats to FIDO systems, including the users' computing environment, the Relying Party's computing environment, and the supply chain, including the vendors of FIDO components.
3. Attack Classification

The following attacks all result in user impersonation if successful. However, they have distinguishing characteristics which we use as the basis for attack classification:

1. Automated attacks not focused on the users' systems, which affect the user.
2. Automated attacks which are focused on the users' devices and which are performed once and lead to the ability to impersonate the user on an on-going basis without involving him or his device directly.
3. Automated attacks which involve the user or his device for each successful impersonation.
4. Automated attacks to sessions authenticated by the user.
5. Not automatable attacks to the user or his device which are performed once and lead to the ability to impersonate the user on an on-going basis without involving him or his device directly.
6. Not automatable attacks to the user or his device which involve the user or his device for each successful impersonation.

**Fig. 2 Attack Classes**

The first four attack classes are considered scalable as they are nominally automatable. The attack classes 5 and 6 are not automatable; they involve some kind of manual/physical interaction of the attacker with the user or his device. We will attribute the threats analyzed in this document with the related attack class (AC1 – AC6).

**NOTE**

1. FIDO uses asymmetric cryptography to protect against AC1. This gives control back to the user, i.e. when using good random numbers, the user's authenticator can make breaking the key as hard as the underlying factoring (in the case of RSA) or discrete logarithm (in the case of DSA or ECDSA) problem.
2. Once counter-measures for this kind of attack are commonly in place, attackers will likely focus on another attack class.
3. The numbers at the attack classes do not imply a feasibility ranking of the related attacks, e.g. it is not necessarily more difficult to perform (AC4) than it is to perform (AC3).
4. The user has almost no influence on the feasibility of attack class AC1. This makes this attack class really bad.
5. The concept of physical security (i.e. “protect your Authenticator from being stolen”), related to attack classes (AC5) and (AC6) is much better internalized by users than the concept of logical security, related to attack classes (AC2), (AC3) and (AC4).
6. In order to protect against misuse of authenticated sessions (e.g. MITB attacks), the FIDO Authenticator must support the concept of transaction confirmation and the relying party must use it.
7. For an attacker to succeed in impersonating the user, any attack class is sufficient.

**Attack Classes**

We define the term scalable attack as any attack where the marginal cost of adding an additional target is near zero and which leads to violations of the FIDO security goals.

**NOTE**

The first four attack classes (AC1, AC2, AC3, and AC4) are considered scalable. The last two attack classes (AC5 and AC6) are not scalable and are performed as one-off user/Relying Party style compromises. We will attribute the threats analyzed in this document with the related attack class (AC1 – AC6).

**AC1**

Attacks not focused on the users' devices and which lead to violations of FIDO security goals. (e.g., compromise of a Relying Party FIDO database and successful decryption of wrapped keys within the database, phishing, MITM attacks, etc.).

**AC2**

Scalable attacks involving the Authenticator which, once performed, lead to the ability to violate FIDO security goals on an ongoing basis without
later involving the users or their devices directly (e.g., a scalable attack on FIDO Authenticators that recovers the user private keys, allowing the attacker to impersonate the users on an ongoing basis).

**AC3** Scalable attacks which involve the user or his device for each instance where the FIDO security goals are violated (e.g., a scalable attack that requires the Authenticator for each successful impersonation).

**AC4** Scalable attacks on sessions authenticated by the user which violate FIDO security goals.

**AC5** Non-scalable attacks involving the Authenticator which, once performed, lead to the ability to violate FIDO security goals on an ongoing basis without later involving the users or their devices directly (e.g., a non-scalable attack on FIDO Authenticators that recovers the user private keys, allowing the attacker to impersonate the users on an ongoing basis).

**AC6** Non-scalable attacks which involve the user or his device for each instance where the FIDO security goals are violated (e.g., a non-scalable attack that requires the Authenticator for each successful impersonation).

### NOTE

At this time we are not explicitly addressing classes of physical attacks on the authenticator that may lead to reduced security if the legitimate user uses the authenticator after the attacker having physical access to it.

## 4. FIDO Security Goals

In this section the specific security goals of FIDO are described. The FIDO UAF protocol [UAFProtocol], FIDO U2F protocol [U2FOverview], and Web Authentication [WebAuthn] support a variety of different FIDO Authenticators. Even though the security of those authenticators varies, the protocol(s) and the FIDO Server should provide a very high level of security - at least on a conceptual level. In reality it might require a FIDO Authenticator with a high security level in order to fully leverage the FIDO security strength.

### NOTE

In certain environments the overall security of the explicit authentication (as provided by FIDO) is less important, as it might be supplemented with a high degree of implicit authentication or the application doesn't even require a high level of authentication strength.

The FIDO U2F protocol [U2FOverview] supports a more constrained set of Authenticator capabilities. It shares the same security goals as UAF, with the exception of [SG-14] Transaction Non-Repudiation.

WebAuthentication [WebAuthn] specifies a Java Script API for accessing Authenticators. Passwordless and second factor use cases are supported. The security goals are very similar and includes extensions supporting Transaction Non-Repudiation.

The FIDO protocols have the following security goals:

**[SG-1]** Strong User Authentication: Authenticate (i.e. recognize) a user and/or a device to a relying party with high (cryptographic) strength.

**[SG-2]** Credential Guessing Resilience: Provide robust protection against eavesdroppers, e.g. be resilient to physical observation, resilient to targeted impersonation, resilient to throttled and unthrottled guessing.

**[SG-3]** Credential Disclosure Resilience: Be resilient to phishing attacks and real-time phishing attack, including resilience to online attacks by adversaries able to actively manipulate network traffic.

**[SG-4]** Unlinkability: Protect the protocol conversation such that any two relying parties cannot link the conversation to one user (i.e. be unlinkable). Verifier Leak Resilience: Be resilient to leaks from other relying parties i.e., nothing that a verifier could possibly leak can help an attacker impersonate the user to another relying party.

**[SG-5]** Authenticator Leak Resilience: Be resilient to leaks from other FIDO Authenticators. I.e., nothing that a particular FIDO Authenticator could possibly leak can help an attacker to impersonate any other user to any relying party.

**[SG-6]** User Consent: Notify the user before a relationship to a new relying party is being established (requiring explicit consent).

**[SG-7]** Limited PII: Limit the amount of personal identifiable information (PII) exposed to the relying party to the absolute minimum.

**[SG-8]** Attestable Properties: Relying Party must be able to verify FIDO Authenticator model/type (in order to calculate the associated risk).

**[SG-9]** DoS Resistance: Be resilient to Denial of Service Attacks i.e. prevent attackers from inserting invalid registration information for a legitimate user for the next login phase. Afterward, the legitimate user will not be able to login successfully anymore.

**[SG-10]** Forgery Resistance: Be resilient to Forgery Attacks (Impersonation Attempts). I.e. prevent attackers from attempting to modify intercepted communications in order to masquerade as the legitimate user and login to the system.

**[SG-11]** Parallel Session Resistance: Be resilient to Parallel Session Attacks. Without knowing a user's authentication credential, an attacker can masquerade as the legitimate user by creating a valid authentication message out of some eavesdropped communication between the user and the server.

**[SG-12]** Forwarding Resistance: Be resilient to Forwarding and Replay Attacks. Having intercepted previous communications, an attacker can impersonate the legal user to authenticate to the system. The attacker can replay or forward the intercepted messages.

**[SG-13]** Transaction Non-Repudiation: Provide strong cryptographic non-repudiation for secure transactions.

**[SG-14]** Respect for Operating Environment Security Boundaries: Ensure that registrations and private key material as a shared system resource is appropriately protected according to the operating environment privilege boundaries in place on the FIDO user device.

**[SG-15]** Assessable Level of Security: Ensure that the design and implementation of the Authenticator allows for the testing laboratory / FIDO Alliance to assess the level of security provided by the Authenticator.

### NOTE

For a definition of the phrases printed in **italics**, refer to [QuestToReplacePasswords] and to PasswordAuthSchemesKeyIssues

## 4.1 Assets to be Protected

Independent of any particular implementation, the FIDO protocols assume some assets to be present and to be protected.
1. Cryptographic Authentication Private Key. Typically, private keys in FIDO are unique for each tuple of (relying party, user account, authenticator).
2. Cryptographic Authentication Key Reference. This is the cryptographic material stored at the relying party and used to uniquely verify the Cryptographic Authentication Key, typically the public key corresponding to the authentication private key.
3. Authenticator Attestation Key (as stored in each authenticator). This should only be usable to attest a Cryptographic Authentication Key and the type/model and manufacturing batch of an Authenticator. Attestation keys are either ECDSA keys [FIDO-EcdaaAlgorithm] or the attestation keys and certificates are shared by a large number of authenticators in a device class from a given vendor in order to prevent their becoming a linkable identifier across relying parties. Authenticator attestation certificates may be self-signed, or signed by an authority key controlled by the vendor.
4. Authenticator Attestation Authority Key. An authenticator vendor may elect to sign authenticator attestation certificates with a per-vendor certificate authority key.
5. Authenticator Attestation Authority Certificate. Contained in the initial/default trust store as part of the FIDO Server and contained in the active trust store maintained by each relying party.
6. Active Trust Store. Contains all trusted attestation root certificates for a given FIDO server.
7. All data items suitable for uniquely identifying the authenticator across relying parties. An attack on those would break the non-linkability security goal.
8. Private key of Relying Party TLS server certificate.
9. TLS root certificate trust store for the users’ browser/app.

5. FIDO Security Measures

**NOTE**

Particular implementations of FIDO Clients, Authenticators, Servers and participating applications may not implement all of these security measures (e.g. Secure Display, [SM-10] Transaction Confirmation) and they also might (and should) implement additional security measures.

**NOTE**

The U2F protocol lacks support for [SM-5] Secure Display, [SM-10] Transaction Confirmation, has only server-supplied [SM-8] Protocol Nonces, and [SM-3] Authenticator Class Attestation is implicit as there is only a single class of device.

[SM-1] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Key Protection**: Authentication key is protected against misuse. Misuse means any use violating the FIDO specification or the details given in the Metadata Statement. Before a key can be used, it requires the User to unlock it using the user verification method specified in the Authenticator Metadata Statement (Silent Authenticators do not require any user verification method).

[SM-2] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Unique Authentication Keys**: Cryptographic authentication key is specific and unique to the tuple of (FIDO Authenticator, User, Relying Party).

[SM-3] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **WebAuthn Authenticator Class Attestation**: Hardware-based FIDO Authenticators support authenticator attestation using an attestation key using one of the FIDO specified attestation types and algorithms. Each relying party receives regular updates of the trust store (through the FIDO Metadata service).

[SM-4] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **User Consent**: FIDO Client implements a user interface for getting user’s consent on any actions (except authentication with silent authenticator) and displaying RP name (derived from server URL).

[SM-5] (UAF + WebAuthn)

- **User Consent**: FIDO Client implements a user interface for getting user’s consent on any actions (except authentication with silent authenticator) and displaying RP name (derived from server URL).

[SM-6] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Cryptographically Secure Verifier Database**: The relying party stores only the public portion of an asymmetric key pair, or an encrypted key handle, as a cryptographic authentication key reference.

[SM-7] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Secure Channel with Server Authentication**: The TLS protocol with server authentication or a transport with equivalent properties is used as transport protocol for authentication messages. The use of S-HTTPS is enforced by a browser or Relying Party application.

[SM-8] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Protocol Nonces**: Both server and client-supplied nonces are used for FIDO UAF registration and authentication. U2F doesn’t support client-supplied nonces.

[SM-9] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Authenticator Certification**: The FIDO Metadata Service includes the Authenticator certification status.

[SM-10] (UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Transaction Confirmation (WYSIWYS)**: Secure Display (WYSIWYS) (optionally) implemented by the FIDO Authenticators is used by FIDO Client for displaying relying party name and transaction data to be confirmed by the user.

[SM-11] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Channel Binding**: Relying Party servers may verify the continuity of a secure channel with a client application.

[SM-12] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Channel Binding**: Relying Party servers may verify the continuity of a secure channel with a client application.

[SM-13] (UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Protecting Access to Authenticator (Key Handle Access Token, authenticator activation PIN)**: Authenticators are able to constrain the use of registration keys within the privilege boundaries defined by the operating environment of the user device (per-user, or per-application, or per-user-per-application as appropriate). FIDO UAF supports a method called Key Handle Access Token (KHAccessToken) [UAFAuthnrCommands].
- **Web Authentication supports an authenticator activation PIN (authenticationClientPIN) [FIDOCTAP].**

[SM-14] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **AppID Separation**: A Relying Party can declare the application identities allowed to access its registered keys, for operating environments on user devices that support this concept. In the case of Web Authentication [WebAuthn] the application identity (called relying party ID “RP ID”) is automatically derived from the web origin.

[SM-15] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Signature Counter**: Authenticators send a monotonically increasing signature counter that a Relying Party can check to possibly detect cloned authenticators.

[SM-16] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Use of strong, modern Cryptographic Primitives**: The FIDO specifications stipulate the use of strong, modern cryptographic primitives helping to ensure the overall security of conformant FIDO implementations. The FIDO Authenticator certification program defines the “Allowed Cryptography List” for allowed cryptographic primitives to be used in FIDO certified authenticators.

[SM-17] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Resistance to Side Channel Attacks.**

[SM-18] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Resistance to Injected Faults in Cryptographic Functions. This security measure purely deals with the cryptographic functions, as compared to the much more general [SM-28].**

[SM-19] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Bounded Probability of a Birthday Collision. For randomly generated nonces (server side or client side), the total number of nonces that can be generated is limited to bound the probability of a birthday collision of generated values.**

[SM-20] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)

- **Individual authenticators are indistinguishable provided authenticators sharing attestation keys are manufactured in sufficiently large (e.g. >
100000) per-model batches.

[SM-21] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)
Authentication and replay-resistance (freshness assurance) of externally-stored protected information.

[SM-22] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)
Certified FIDO Authenticators fully described by the vendor, and tested to verify that it functions as specified.

[SM-23] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)
Key Handles containing a key are cryptographically linked with the Authenticator that produced the Key Handle and with the Relying Party associated with the Key Handle.

[SM-24] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)
Design, implementation and manufacture of certified FIDO Authenticators supports Authenticator security.

[SM-25] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)
Depending on the certification level, certified authenticators are required to implement a Trusted Path for all user / Authenticator direct interactions.

[SM-26] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)
Input Data Validation: Malformed or maliciously crafted input data does not result in unexpected Authenticator behavior.

[SM-27] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)
Protection of user verification reference data and biometric data.

[SM-28] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)
Resistance to Fault Injection Attacks.

[SM-29] (U2F + UAF + WebAuthn)
Resistance to Remote Timing Attacks: No leakage of secret information to remote entities via variation of operation execution time.

5.1 Relation between Measures and Goals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Security Goal</th>
<th>Supporting Security Measures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Security Goal</td>
<td>Supporting Security Measures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-20] No Identifying Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-4] Authenticator Status Checking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-9] Authenticator Certification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-8] Protocol Nonces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-11] Round Trip Integrity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-12] ChannelBinding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-8] Protocol Nonces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-11] Round Trip Integrity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-12] Channel Binding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-8] Protocol Nonces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-11] Round Trip Integrity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-12] Channel Binding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-2] Unique Authentication Keys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-8] Protocol Nonces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-9] Authenticator Certification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-10] Transaction Confirmation (WYSIWYS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-11] Round Trip Integrity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-12] Channel Binding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-25] Trusted path for all user interactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-14] AppID Separation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. FIDO Security Assumptions

In this section, we enumerate the assumptions we are making regarding the security characteristics of the operating environment components on which a FIDO implementation depends.

[SA-1] The Authenticator and its cryptographic algorithms and parameters (key size, mode, output length, etc.) in use are not subject to unknown weaknesses that make them unfit for their purpose in encrypting, digitally signing, and authenticating messages.

[SA-2] Operating system privilege separation mechanisms relied upon by the software modules involved in a FIDO operation on the user device perform as advertised. E.g. boundaries between user and kernel mode, between user accounts, and between applications (where applicable) are securely enforced and security principals can be mutually, securely identifiable.

[SA-3] Applications on the user device are able to establish secure channels that provide trustworthy server authentication, and confidentiality and integrity for messages (e.g., through TLS).

[SA-4] The computing environment on the FIDO user device and the applications involved in a FIDO operation act as trustworthy agents of the user.

[SA-5]
7.1.1 Exploiting User’s pattern matching weaknesses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.1.1</th>
<th>Homograph Mis-Registration</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AC3</td>
<td>The user registers a FIDO authentication key with a fraudulent web site instead of the genuine Relying Party.</td>
<td>SG-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong> The fraudulent site may convince the user to disclose a set of non-FIDO credentials sufficient to allow the attacker to register a FIDO Authenticator under its own control, at the genuine Relying Party, on the users’ behalf, violating [SG-1] Strong User Authentication.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong> Disclosure of non-FIDO credentials is outside of the scope of the FIDO security measures, but Relying Parties should be aware that the initial strength of an authentication key is no better than the identity-proofing applied as part of the registration process.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.1.2</th>
<th>Homograph Mis-Authentication</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AC3</td>
<td>The user accidentally browses to a fraudulent web site. The attacker tries to act as man-in-the-middle (MITM) and requests the user to authenticate. In the case of username/password based authentication this is a typical phishing attack.</td>
<td>SG-1, SG-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong> The FIDO subsystem will determine that either (a) no FIDO authenticator has been registered with the fraudulent site or (b) it will use the FIDO Uauth key registered to the fraudulent site - which is different from the Uauth key for the relying party's site.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong> FIDO inherently ties keys to the relying party (formally identified by the AppID, and authenticated by TLS and the CA infrastructure).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.1.2 Threats to the User Device, FIDO Client and Relying Party Client Applications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.2.1</th>
<th>FIDO Client Corruption</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AC3</td>
<td>Attacker gains ability to execute code in the security context of the FIDO Client.</td>
<td>SA-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong> Violation of [SA-4].</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong> When the operating environment on the FIDO user device allows, the FIDO Client should operate in a privileged and isolated context under [SA-2] to protect itself from malicious modification by anything outside of the Trusted Computing Base.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.2.2</th>
<th>Logical/Physical User Device Attack</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AC3</td>
<td>Attacker gains physical access to the FIDO user device but not the FIDO Authenticator.</td>
<td>SA-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong> Possible violation of [SA-4] by installing malicious software or otherwise tampering with the FIDO user device.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong> [SM-1] Key Protection prevents the disclosure of authentication keys or other assets during a transient compromise of the FIDO user device. A persistent compromise of the FIDO user device can lead to a violation of [SA-4] unless additional protection measures outside the scope of FIDO are applied to the FIDO user device. (e.g. whole disk encryption and boot-chain integrity).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.2.3</th>
<th>User Device Account Access</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AC3</td>
<td>Attacker gains access to a user’s login credentials on the FIDO user device.</td>
<td>SG-1, SG-T3, SA-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong> Authenticators might be remotely abused, or weakly-verifying authenticators might be locally abused, violating [SG-1] Strong User Authentication and [SG-13] Transaction Non-Repudiation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Possible violation of [SA-4] by the installation of malicious software.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong> Relying Parties can use [SM-9] Authenticator Certification and [SM-3] Authenticator Class Attestation to determine the nature of authenticators and not rely on weak, or weakly-verifying authenticators for high value operations.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-1.2.3</td>
<td>User Device Account Access Violates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AC3</strong></td>
<td>A client application fails to properly validate the remote server identity, accepts forged or stolen credentials for a remote server, or allows weak or missing cryptographic protections for the secure channel.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>An active network adversary can modify the Relying Party's authenticator policy and downgrade the client's choice of authenticator to make it easier to attack.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>The server can verify [SM-8] Protocol Nonces to detect replayed messages and protect from an adversary that can read but not modify traffic in a secure channel. The server can mandate a channel with strong cryptographic protections to prevent message forgery and can verify a [SM-12] Channel Binding to detect forwarded messages.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG-11, SG-12, SG-13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.2.5</th>
<th>RP App Corruption Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>An attacker is able to obtain malicious execution in the security context of the Relying Party client application (e.g. via Cross-Site Scripting (XSS)) or abuse the secure channel or session identifier after the user has successfully authenticated. This is a client side attack.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>The server can employ [SM-10] Transaction Confirmation to gain additional assurance for high value operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG-14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.2.6</th>
<th>Fingerprinting Authenticators Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>A remote adversary is able to uniquely identify a FIDO user device using the fingerprint of discoverable configuration of its FIDO Authenticators.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>The exposed information violates [SG-8] Limited PII, allowing an adversary to violate [SG-7] User Consent by strongly identifying the user without their knowledge and [SG-4] Unlinkability by sharing that fingerprint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For web browsing situations where this threat is most prominent, user agents may provide additional user controls around the discoverability of FIDO Authenticators.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG-4, SG-7, SG-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.2.7</th>
<th>App to FIDO Client full MITM attack Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>Malicious software on the FIDO user device is able to read, tamper with, or spoof the endpoint of inter-process communication channels between the FIDO Client and browser or Relying Party application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>Adversary is able to subvert [SA-2].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On platforms where [SA-2] is not strong the security of the system may depend on preventing malicious applications from being loaded onto the FIDO user device. Such protections, e.g. app store policing, are outside the scope of FIDO. When using [SM-10] Transaction Confirmation, the user will be presented with the relevant AppID and transaction text and will be able to evaluate whether or not to consent to the transaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SA-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.2.8</th>
<th>Authenticator to App Read-Only MITM attack Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>An adversary is able to obtain an authenticator's signed protocol response message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>The attacker attempts to replay the message to authenticate as the user, violating [SG-1] Strong User Authentication, [SG-13] Forwarding Resistance and [SG-12] Parallel Session Resistance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The server can use [SM-8] Protocol Nonces to detect replay of messages and verify [SM-11] Round Trip Integrity to detect modified messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG-1, SG-12, SG-13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.2.9</th>
<th>Malicious App Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>A user installs an application that represents itself as being associated with to one Relying Party application but actually initiates a protocol conversation with a different Relying Party and attempts to abuse previously registered authentication keys at that Relying Party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other consequences equivalent to [T-1.2.5]</strong></td>
<td>Adversary is able to violate [SG-7] User Consent by misrepresenting the target of authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>If a [SM-5] Transaction Confirmation Display is present, the user may be able to verify the true target of an operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the malicious application attempts to communicate directly with an Authenticator that uses [SM-13] KeyHandleAccessToken, it should not be able to access keys registered by other FIDO Clients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the operating environment on the FIDO user device supports it, the FIDO client may be able to determine the application's identity and verify if it is authorized to target that Relying Party using a [SM-14] AppID Separation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG-7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-1.2.10</th>
<th>Phishing Attack Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>A Phisher convinces the user to enter his PIN used for user verification into an application / web site disclosing the PIN to the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Phishing Attack

**AC2**

**Phisher. In the traditional username/password world this enables the attacker to successfully impersonate the user (to the relying party).**

**Consequences:** None as the phisher additionally would need access to the Authenticator in order to pass user verification [SM-1]. In FIDO, the user verification PIN (if user verification is done via PIN) is not known to the relying party and hence isn’t sufficient for user impersonation. If user verification is done using an alternative user verification method, this applies accordingly.

**Mitigations:** In FIDO, the Uauth.priv key is used to sign a relying party supplied challenge. without (use) access to that key, no impersonation is possible.

**Violates**

---

### Malicious FIDO Client

**AC3**

**Attacker convinces users to install and use a malicious FIDO Client.**

**Consequences:** Violation of [SA-4]. The malicious FIDO Client could trigger the use of any Uauth key in the context of the related AppID. User Verification / User Presence Check will be performed by the Authenticator as indicated.

**Mitigations:** Mitigating malicious software installation is outside the scope of FIDO. If an authenticator implements [SM-1] Key Protection, the user may be able to recover full control of their registered authentication keys by removing the malicious software from their user device.

When using [SM-10] Transaction Confirmation, the user sees the claimed AppIDs and transaction text and can decide to accept or reject the action.

Platforms implementing FIDO can filter communication to FIDO Authenticators. Depending on the platform such filter mechanisms may limit access to white-listed Apps.

**Violates**

---

### 7.1.3 Threat to the communication between Client and FIDO Authenticator

#### Malicious App with direct communication access to FIDO Authenticator

**AC3**

**Attacker convinces users to install and use a malicious App that gained direct communication access to a FIDO Authenticator.**

**Consequences:** Violation of [SA-4]. The malicious App could trigger the use of any Uauth key in the context of the related AppID. User Verification / User Presence Check will be performed by the Authenticator as indicated.

**Mitigations:** Mitigating malicious software installation is outside the scope of FIDO. If an authenticator implements [SM-1] Key Protection, the user may be able to recover full control of their registered authentication keys by removing the malicious software from their user device.

When using [SM-10] Transaction Confirmation, the user sees the claimed AppIDs and transaction text and can decide to accept or reject the action.

Platforms implementing FIDO can filter communication to FIDO Authenticators. Depending on the platform such filter mechanisms may limit access to white-listed Apps.

**Violates**

#### Malicious Device with direct communication access to FIDO Authenticator

**AC3**

**Attacker operates a malicious device that can intercept and modify (full MITM attack) the communication between Client and FIDO Authenticator (e.g. through some wireless transport protocol supported by the FIDO Authenticator).**

**Consequences:** Violation of [SA-4]. The malicious device could trigger the use of any Uauth key in the context of the AppID (related to that key). User Verification / User Presence Check will be performed by the Authenticator as indicated.

**Mitigations:** FIDO expects each transport protocol (i.e. the communication between client and FIDO Authenticator) to provide a secure link (e.g. see section 8.3.3 in [FIDOCTAP]).

When using [SM-10] Transaction Confirmation, the user sees the claimed AppIDs and transaction text and can decide to accept or reject the action.

**Violates**

---

### Hostile ASM / Client

**AC3, AC5, AC6**

**In this threat, the Authenticator support infrastructure is hostile, and can feed arbitrary data to the Authenticator. For example some SW running on the User Device and having direct access to the Authenticator (e.g. through CTAP). Or some software running on a separate device that also has direct access to the Authenticator (e.g. through CTAP via BLE transport).**

**Consequences:** May undermine [SG-4], [SG-5], [SG-7], [SG-8].

**Mitigations:** This threat is mitigated by [SM-10], [SM-13].

**Violates**

---

### 7.2 Threats to FIDO Authenticator

#### Malicious Authenticator

**AC3, AC5, AC6**

**Attacker convinces users to use a maliciously implemented authenticator.**

**Consequences:** The fake authenticator does not implement any appropriate security measures and is able to violate all security goals of FIDO.

**Violates**

---
## Trust Violations

### T-1.4.1 Malicious Authenticator Violates AC2

**Attacker succeeds in extracting a user’s cryptographic authentication private key for use in a different context.**

**Consequences:** The attacker could impersonate the user with a cloned authenticator that does not do trustworthy user verification, violating [SG-1].

**Mitigations:** [SM-1] Key Protection measures are intended to prevent this.

### T-1.4.2 Uauth.priv Key Compromise Violates AC2

**Attacker succeeds in extracting a user’s cryptographic authentication private key for use in a different context.**

**Consequences:** The attacker could impersonate the user with a cloned authenticator that does not do trustworthy user verification, violating [SG-1].

**Mitigations:** [SM-1] Key Protection measures are intended to prevent this.

### T-1.4.3 User Verification By-Pass Violates AC3, AC5

**Attacker could use the cryptographic authentication key (inside the authenticator) either with or without being noticed by the legitimate user.**

**Consequences:** Attacker could impersonate user, violating [SG-1].

**Mitigations:** A user can only register and a Relying Party only allow authenticators that perform [SM-1] Key Protection with an appropriately secure user verification process.

Does not apply to Silent Authenticators (see [FIDO glossary]).

### T-1.4.4 Physical Authenticator Attack Violates AC2, AC5, AC6

**Attacker could get physical access to FIDO Authenticator (e.g. by stealing it).**

**Consequences:** Attacker could bring the authenticator in a lab in order to use the authentication key (e.g. by-passing user verification and knowing the RP related to this key). If this physical attack succeeds, the attacker could successfully impersonate the user, violating [SG-1] Strong User Authentication.

**Mitigations:** [SM-1] Key Protection includes requirements to implement strong protections for key material, including resilience to offline attacks and low entropy situations.

Relying Parties should use [SM-3] Authenticator Class Attestation to only accept Authenticators implementing a sufficiently strong user verification method.

### T-1.4.5 Fake Authenticator Violates AC2

**Attacker is able to extract the authenticator attestation key from an authenticator, e.g. by neutralizing physical countermeasures in a laboratory setting.**

**Consequences:** Attacker can violate [SG-9] Attestable Properties by creating a malicious hardware or software device that represents itself as a legitimate one.

**Mitigations:** Relying Parties can use [SM-4] Authenticator Status Checking to identify known-compromised keys. Identification of such compromise is outside the strict scope of the FIDO protocols.

### T-1.4.6 Transaction Confirmation Display Overlay Attack Violates AC6

**Attacker is able to subvert [SM-5] Secure Display functionality (WYSIWYS), perhaps by overlaying the display with false information.**

**Consequences:** Violation of [SG-14] Transaction Non-Repudiation.

**Mitigations:** Authenticator implementations must take care to protect in their implementation of a secure display, e.g. by implementing a distinct hardware display or employing appropriate privileges in the operating environment of the user device to protect against spoofing and tampering.

[SM-9] Authenticator Certification will provide Relying Parties with metadata about the nature of a transaction confirmation display information that can be used to assess whether it matches the assurance level and risk tolerance of the Relying Party for that particular transaction.

### T-1.4.7 Signature Algorithm Attack Violates AC1

A cryptographic attack is discovered against the public key cryptography system used to sign data by the FIDO authenticator. See also T-1.4.10.

**Consequences:** Attacker is able to use messages generated by the client to violate [SG-2] Credential Guessing Resistance.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Mitigations:</strong></th>
<th><strong>Consequences:</strong></th>
<th><strong>AC</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[SM-8] Protocol Nonces, including client-generated entropy, limit the amount of control any adversary has over the internal structure of an authenticator.</td>
<td>This constitutes a complete compromise of the RNG, with no ability to recover, so mitigation for this threat involves reducing the impact of a compromised RNG. This is partially mitigated by using an allowed random number generator that allows secure integration of additional input [SM-16] and introduction of data derived from the RP challenge additional input to the PRNG, which can help so long as the attacker has not additionally compromised the TLS session or the ASM / Authenticator link. Using the deterministic signature generation methods (e.g., RFC 6979) can reduce the risk of compromise of existing keys during the signature process, as can using the private key and hash of the signed message as additional input to the PRNG during signature generation. Prevention of non-scalable versions of this style of attack is at least partially addressed by [SM-17] and [SM-18].</td>
<td>SM-1, SG-2, SG-3, SG-4, SG-11, SG-14.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Compromised entropy source after successful seeding during initialization

Violates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AC1, AC2, AC5</th>
<th>Compromised entropy source after successful seeding during initialization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In this threat, an attacker gains the ability to influence the Authenticator’s entropy source, but only after the initial seeding has been conducted (e.g., if initial seeding occurred prior to the attack and / or as per-Authenticator factory injection of entropy).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consequences: May undermine [SG-1], [SG-2], [SG-3], [SG-4], [SG-11], [SG-14].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitigations: This is mitigated by using an allowed PRNG which retains PRNG state between power cycles; i.e., which conserves PRNG state even when being reseeded [SM-16]. Prevention of non-scalable versions of this style of attack is at least partially addressed by [SM-17] and [SM-18].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Compromised the internal PRNG state, but not the entropy source

Violates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AC1, AC2, AC5</th>
<th>Compromised the internal PRNG state, but not the entropy source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In this threat, an attacker compromisers the entropy source prior to seeding the PRNG or otherwise compromises the internal PRNG state, but then at some point, the attacker no longer can access / control the entropy source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consequences: May undermine [SG-1], [SG-2], [SG-3], [SG-4], [SG-11], [SG-14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitigations: This can be mitigated by Authenticators reseeding periodically within an internal entropy source [SM-16]. As a note, this imposes a total number of random number generator requests prior to a required reseed event; in the event that the Authenticator does not have an entropy source internally, this may act as a hard limit on the number of registrations / authentications that such an Authenticator can perform. Prevention of non-scalable versions of this style of attack is at least partially addressed by [SM-17] and [SM-18].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Bad Key Generation

Violates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AC1, AC2, AC5</th>
<th>Bad Key Generation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In this threat, random chance or active attack causes the key generated to be cryptographically flawed; e.g., a RSA key that can be factored using the Pollard p-1 algorithm more quickly than with the General Number Field Sieve. See also T-1.4.21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consequences: May undermine [SG-1], [SG-2], [SG-4], [SG-11], [SG-14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitigations: This is mitigated by requiring use of an allowed random number generator (in the case of certified authenticators), requiring that keys be generated in the way required in the relevant standard specified in the Allowed Cryptography List [SM-16], and making the key generation process resistant to tampering by the attacker [SM-18].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Local external side channel attacks

Violates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AC2 with shared keys) AC5</th>
<th>Local external side channel attacks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In this threat, an attacker with possession of the Authenticator may be able to extract keys using timing, power, RF, or near-field analysis. The impact depends on the key or secret recovered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consequences: May undermine [SG-1], [SG-2], [SG-4], [SG-11], [SG-14].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitigations: This is mitigated by the side channel resistance security measure [SM-17].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Internal side channel attacks

Violates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AC2 with shared keys) AC5</th>
<th>Internal side channel attacks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In this threat, an attacker controlling a process running on the same hardware environment as the Authenticator may be able to recover keys by using information leaked by hardware or operating system characteristics (e.g., how often the attacker’s process is scheduled, the state of the L1, L2 caches, etc.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consequences: May undermine [SG-1], [SG-4], [SG-11], [SG-14].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitigations: This is mitigated by the side channel resistance security measure [SM-17].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Error injection during key or signature generation

Violates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AC2 with shared keys) AC5</th>
<th>Error injection during key or signature generation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In this threat, an attacker is able to inject an error in the key or signature generation process that leaks part or all of the private key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consequences: May undermine [SG-1], [SG-4], [SG-11], [SG-14].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitigations: This is mitigated by [SM-18] and [SM-28].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Birthday Paradox Collision

Violates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AC3, AC6</th>
<th>Birthday Paradox Collision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In this threat, a set of randomly generated parameters collide. The probability of this occurrence can be bounded using analysis similar to that associated with the classical Birthday Paradox.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consequences: May undermine [SG-1], [SG-11], [SG-14].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitigations: Establishing a bounded number of allowable outputs based on the size of the randomly generated value [SM-19].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Privacy Reduction

Violates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AC1</th>
<th>Privacy Reduction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In this threat, a small number of Authenticators share an attestation key which leaks information about the user across Relying Parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consequences: May undermine [SG-4].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitigations: This is mitigated by [SM-20].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Covert Channel

Violates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AC1</th>
<th>Covert Channel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In this threat, an Authenticator is malicious (either by design, or after having been independently compromised) and it is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Covert Channel

In this threat, an attacker substitutes protected information, either by modifying it piecemeal, or by completely substituting it with another value. (Some encryption modes allow an attacker to target bit-level changes to the plaintext. Authenticated data may also have been replaced with data that had previously been authenticated in the same way.)

**Consequences:** May undermine [SG-1], [SG-4], [SG-6], [SG-8], [SG-11], [SG-14].

**Mitigations:** This threat is mitigated by [SM-1], [SM-16], [SM-21].

### Substitution of Protected Information

In this threat, an attacker recovers data that should be protected by the Authenticator.

**Consequences:** May undermine [SG-1], [SG-2], [SG-4], [SG-6], [SG-7], [SG-8], [SG-11], [SG-14].

**Mitigations:** This threat is mitigated by using allowed cryptographic primitives [SM-1], [SM-16].

### Compromise of Protected Information

In this threat, an attacker may be able to cause these counters to be reset, to roll over, or otherwise to decrease in value.

**Consequences:** May undermine [SG-1], [SG-12], [SG-14].

**Mitigations:** This threat is mitigated by [SM-15].

### Unexpected use of User Verification Caching

In this threat the FIDO Authenticator support User Verification Caching (e.g. section 5.5, in [UAFRegistry]), and the RP App triggers a signature assertions to be created by the authenticator in which malware convinces the FIDO Authenticator to use User Verification Caching (i.e. not verifying the user if the FIDO Authenticator has verified the user within a specified time frame) and specifies a large timeframe so that the user is not freshly verified.

**Consequences:** May undermine [SG-4], [SG-5], [SG-7], [SG-8].

**Mitigations:** Conforming Authenticators will add a signed extension to the signature assertion indicating that User Verification Caching was indeed activated and also indicating the maximum acceptable caching time. Conforming FIDO Servers will only accept such signature assertion if the use of user verification caching was triggered by the FIDO Server - indicating that the FIDO Server is aware of the implications (e.g. no explicit user consent).

### Debug Interface

In this threat, the Authenticator has a hardware or software debugging interface that is not completely disabled prior to distribution of the Authenticator (e.g., pads for a JTAG port).

**Consequences:** May undermine [SG-1], [SG-4], [SG-6], [SG-8], [SG-11], [SG-14].

**Mitigations:** This threat is mitigated by [SM-18], [SM-22], and [SM-28].

### Fault induced by malformed input

In this threat, the Authenticator behaves in an unexpected fashion due to an error in processing malformed input. The result of this style of attack is poorly controllable, absent strong internal segmentation of the Authenticator.

**Consequences:** May undermine [SG-1], [SG-2], [SG-3], [SG-4], [SG-6], [SG-7], [SG-8], [SG-11], [SG-14], [SG-16].

**Mitigations:** This threat is mitigated by [SM-1], [SM-2], [SM-4], [SM-5], [SM-10], [SM-5], [SM-23], [SM-13], [SM-26].

### Fault Injection Attack

In this threat, an attacker subjects the Authenticator to conditions that induce hardware faults (e.g., exposure to photons or charged particles, inducing variations in supply voltage or external clock, altering the temperature, etc.) in an attempt to subvert some logical or physical protection. The result of this style of attack is poorly controllable, absent active detection and response functionality within the Authenticator. This is related to T-1.4.21, but applies more broadly.

**Consequences:** May undermine [SG-1], [SG-2], [SG-3], [SG-4], [SG-6], [SG-7], [SG-8], [SG-11], [SG-14], [SG-16].

**Mitigations:** Mitigated by [SM-1], [SM-2], [SM-4], [SM-5], [SM-10], [SM-5], [SM-18], [SM-23], [SM-13], [SM-26], [SM-28].
### 7.3 Threats to Relying Party

#### 7.3.1 Threats to FIDO Server Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>T-2.1.1</strong></th>
<th><strong>FIDO Server DB Read Attack</strong></th>
<th><strong>Violation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AC2, AC5</strong></td>
<td>Attacker could obtain read-access to FIDO Server registration database.</td>
<td><strong>SG-1, SG-2, SG-4, SG-11, SG-14</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>Attacker can access all cryptographic key handles and authenticator characteristics associated with a username. If an authenticator or combination of authenticators is unique, they might use this to try to violate [SG-2] Unlinkability.</td>
<td><strong>SG-2, SG-5</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The use of an [SM-6] Cryptographically Secure Verifier Database helps assure that it is infeasible to attack any leaked verifier keys.</td>
<td><strong>SM-6</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[SM-9] Authenticator Certification along with [SM-16] should help prevent authenticators with poor entropy from entering the market, reducing the likelihood that even a large corpus of key material will be useful in mounting attacks.</td>
<td><strong>SM-16</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>Mitigating such attacks is outside the scope of the FIDO specifications. The Relying Party must maintain the integrity of any information it relies up on to identify a user as part of [SA-6].</td>
<td><strong>SA-6</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>T-2.1.2</strong></th>
<th><strong>FIDO Server DB Modification Attack</strong></th>
<th><strong>Violation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AC1</strong></td>
<td>Attacker gains write-access to the FIDO Server registration database.</td>
<td><strong>SA-6</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>Attacker can inject a key registration under its control, violating [SG-1] Strong User Authentication.</td>
<td><strong>SG-1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>Mitigating such attacks is outside the scope of the FIDO specifications. The Relying Party must maintain the integrity of any information it relies up on to identify a user as part of [SA-6].</td>
<td><strong>SA-6</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>T-2.2.1</strong></th>
<th><strong>Web App Malware</strong></th>
<th><strong>Violation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AC1</strong></td>
<td>Attacker gains ability to execute code in the security context of the Relying Party web application or FIDO Server.</td>
<td><strong>SG-1, SG-2, SG-10</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>Attacker is able to violate [SG-1], [SG-10], [SG-9] and any other Relying Party controls.</td>
<td><strong>SG-1, SG-2, SG-10</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>The consequences of such an incident are limited to the relationship between the user and that particular Relying Party by [SM-1], [SM-2], and [SM-5].</td>
<td><strong>SM-1, SM-2, SM-5</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Even within the Relying Party to user relationship, a user can be protected by [SM-10] Transaction Confirmation if the compromise does not include the users' computing environment.</td>
<td><strong>SM-10</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>T-2.2.2</strong></th>
<th><strong>Linking through compromised Relying Party database</strong></th>
<th><strong>Violation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AC1</strong></td>
<td>In this threat, a Relying Party is able to access another Relying Party’s database (either because the Relying Parties are collaborating or because of the compromise of another Relying Party’s database). The malicious party then sends Key Handles (which may contain a wrapped private key) from the other Relying Party’s database in an attempt to link the two separate accounts to the same Authenticator (thus user).</td>
<td><strong>SG-1, SG-4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>May undermine [SG-1], [SG-4].</td>
<td><strong>SG-1, SG-4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>This threat is mitigated by [SM-1], [SM-2], [SM-5], [SM-23].</td>
<td><strong>SM-1, SM-2, SM-5, SM-23</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.4 Threats to the Secure Channel between Client and Relying Party

#### 7.4.1 Exploiting Weaknesses in the Secure Transport of FIDO Messages

FIDO takes as a base assumption that [SA-3] applications on the user device are able to establish secure channels that provide trustworthy server authentication, and confidentiality and integrity for messages. e.g. through TLS. [T-1.2.4] Discusses some consequences of violations of this assumption due to implementation errors in a browser or client application, but other threats exist in different layers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>T-3.1.1</strong></th>
<th><strong>TLS Proxy</strong></th>
<th><strong>Violation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AC3</strong></td>
<td>The FIDO user device is administratively configured to connect through a proxy that terminates TLS connections. The client trusts this device, but the connection between the user and FIDO server is no longer end-to-end secure.</td>
<td><strong>SG-11, SG-12, SG-13</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences:</strong></td>
<td>Any such proxies introduce a new party into the protocol. If this party is untrustworthy, consequences may be as for [T-1.2.4].</td>
<td><strong>T-1.2.4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations:</strong></td>
<td>Mitigations for [T-1.2.4] apply, except that the proxy is considered trusted by the client, so certain methods of [SM-12] Channel Binding may indicate a compromised channel even in the absence of an attack. Servers should use multiple methods and adjust their risk scoring appropriately. A trustworthy client that reports a server certificate that is unknown to the server and does not chain to a public root may indicate a client behind such a proxy. A client reporting a server certificate that is unknown to the server but validates for the server's identity according to commonly used public trust roots is more likely to indicate [T-3.1.2].</td>
<td><strong>T-3.1.2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitigations for [T-1.2.4] apply, except that the proxy is considered trusted by the client, so certain methods of [SM-12] Channel Binding may indicate a compromised channel even in the absence of an attack. Servers should use multiple methods and adjust their risk scoring appropriately. A trustworthy client that reports a server certificate that is unknown to the server and does not chain to a public root may indicate a client behind such a proxy. A client reporting a server certificate that is unknown to the server but validates for the server's identity according to commonly used public trust roots is more likely to indicate [T-3.1.2].</td>
<td><strong>T-3.1.2</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3.1.1 TLS Proxy Violates

An attacker is able to obtain control of a certificate credential for a Relying Party, perhaps from a compromised Certification Authority or poor protection practices by the Relying Party.

**Consequences:** As for \( T-1.2.4 \).

**Mitigations:** As for \( T-1.2.4 \).

### 3.1.2 Fraudulent TLS Server Certificate Violates

**AC3**

An attacker is able to obtain control of a certificate credential for a Relying Party, perhaps from a compromised Certification Authority or poor protection practices by the Relying Party.

**Consequences:** As for \( T-1.2.4 \).

**Mitigations:** As for \( T-1.2.4 \).

### 3.1.3 Protocol level real-time MITM attack Violates

An adversary can intercept and manipulate network packets sent from the relying party to the client. The adversary uses this capability to (a) terminate the underlying TLS session from the client at the adversary and to (b) simultaneously use another TLS session from the adversary to the relying party. In the traditional username/password world, this allows the adversary to intercept the username and the password and then successfully impersonate the user at the relying party.

**Consequences:** None if FIDO channelBinding [SM-12] or transaction confirmation [SM-10] are used.

**Mitigations:** In the case of channelBinding [SM-12], the FIDO server will detect the MITM in the TLS channel by comparing the channel binding information provided by the client and the channel binding information retrieved locally by the server.

In the case of transaction confirmation [SM-10], the user verifies and approves a particular transaction. The adversary could modify the transaction before approval. This would lead to rejection by the user. Alternatively, the adversary could modify the transaction after approval. This will break the signature in the transaction confirmation response. The FIDO Server will not accept it as a consequence.

HTTP Public Key Pinning (RFC7469) can also be used to mitigate this attack (outside the FIDO stack).

### 7.5 Threats to the Infrastructure

#### 7.5.1 Threats to FIDO Authenticator Manufacturers

##### 4.1.1 Manufacturer Level Attestation Key Compromise Violates

**AC2**

Attacker obtains control of an attestation key or attestation key issuing key.

**Consequences:** Same as \( T-1.4.6 \): Attacker can violate \( SG-9 \) Attestable Properties by creating a malicious hardware or software device that represents itself as a legitimate one.

**Mitigations:** Same as \( T-1.4.6 \): Relying Parties can use \( SM-4 \) Authenticator Status Checking to identify known-compromised keys. Identification of such compromise is outside the strict scope of the FIDO protocols.

### 7.5.2 Threats to FIDO Server Vendors

##### 4.2.1 Vendor Level Trust Anchor Injection Attack Violates

**AC1, AC2, AC3, AC5, AC6**

FIDO Authenticator manufacturer relies on hardware or software components that generate weak cryptographic authentication key material or contain backdoors.

**Consequences:** Effective violation of \( SA-1 \) in the context of such an Authenticator.

**Mitigations:** The process of \( SM-9 \) Authenticator Certification may reveal a subset of such threats, but it is not possible that all such can be revealed with black box testing and white box examination may be is economically infeasible. Users and Relying Parties with special concerns about this class of threat must exercise their own necessary caution about the trustworthiness and verifiability of their vendors and supply chain. \( SM-24 \) builds confidence that an Authenticator is not malicious or poorly implemented.

### 7.5.3 Threats to FIDO Metadata Service Operators

##### 4.3.1 Metadata Service Signing Key Compromise Violates

**AC2**

The attacker gets access to the private Metadata TOC signing key.

**Consequences:** The attacker could sign invalid Metadata. The attacker could

- make trustworthy authenticators look less trustworthy (e.g. by increasing FAR).
- make weak authenticators look strong (e.g. by changing the key protection method to a more secure one)
- inject malicious attestation trust anchors, e.g. root certificates which cross-signed the original attestation trust anchor and the cross-signed original attestation root certificate. This malicious trust anchors could be used to sign attestation certificates for fraudulent authenticators, e.g. authenticators using the AAID of trustworthy authenticators but not protecting their keys as stated in the metadata.

**Mitigations:** The Metadata Service operator should protect the Metadata signing key appropriately, e.g. using a hardware
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-4.3.1</th>
<th>Metadata Service Signing Key Compromise</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relying parties could use out-of-band methods to cross-check Metadata Statements with the respective vendors and cross-check the revocation state of the Metadata signing key with the provider of the Metadata Service.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-4.3.2</th>
<th>Metadata Statement Data Injection</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>An attacker injects malicious Authenticator data into the Metadata Statement.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences</strong>: The attacker could make the Metadata Service operator sign invalid Metadata Statements. The attacker could make trustworthy authenticators look less trustworthy (e.g. by increasing FAR), make weak authenticators look strong (e.g. by changing the key protection method to a more secure one), inject malicious attestation trust anchors, e.g. root certificates which cross-signed the original attestation trust anchor and the cross-signed original attestation root certificate. This malicious trust anchors could be used to sign attestation certificates for fraudulent authenticators, e.g. authenticators using the AAID of trustworthy authenticators but not protecting their keys as stated in the metadata.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations</strong>: The Metadata Service operator could carefully review the delta between the old and the new Metadata Statements. Authenticator vendors could verify the published Metadata Statements related to their Authenticators.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.6 Threats Specific to Second Factor Authenticators (U2F /UAF / WebAuthn)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-5.1.1</th>
<th>Error Status Side Channel</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relying parties issues an authentication challenge to an authenticator and can infer from error status if it is already registered.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences</strong>: UAF Silent authenticators / U2F authenticators not requiring user interaction for generating a signed response may be used to track users without their consent by issuing a pre-authentication challenge to them, revealing the identity of an otherwise anonymous user. Users would be identifiable by relying parties without their knowledge, violating [SG-7].</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations</strong>: The U2F specification recommends that browsers prompt users whether to allow this operation using mechanisms similar to those defined for other privacy sensitive operations like Geolocation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-5.1.2</th>
<th>Malicious RP</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Malicious relying party mounts a cryptographic attack on a key handle it is storing.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences</strong>: If the Relying Party is able to recover the contents of the key handle, it might forge logs of protocol exchanges to associate the user with actions he or she did not perform.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the Relying Party is able to recover the key used to wrap a key handle, that key is likely used for all key handles, and hence might be used to decrypt key handles stored with other Relying Parties and violate [SG-1] Strong User Authentication.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations</strong>: None. Some U2F Authenticators and some Authenticators implementing Web Authentication (i.e. the ones without &quot;resident keys&quot;) depend on [SA-1] to hold for key wrapping operations.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-5.1.3</th>
<th>Physical Attack on a User Presence Authenticator</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attacker gains physical access to an authenticator with only user presence check (e.g., by stealing it).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences</strong>: Same as for [T-1.4.4].</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Such authenticators have weak local user verification. If the attacker can guess the username and password/PIN, they can impersonate the user, violating [SG-1] Strong User Authentication.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations</strong>: Relying Parties can use strong additional factors. Relying Parties should provide users a means to revoke keys associated with a lost device.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-5.1.4</th>
<th>Physical Attack</th>
<th>Violates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In this threat, keys or other sensitive information is read out by directly accessing it from the authenticator that the attacker has physically compromised.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consequences</strong>: May undermine [SG-1], [SG-4], [SG-11], [SG-14]. Authenticator with user presence check have weak local user verification. If the attacker can guess the username and password/PIN, they can impersonate the user, violating [SG-1] Strong User Authentication.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigations</strong>: Mitigated by resistance to injected faults [SM-18] and [SM-28].</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8. Acknowledgements

We thank iSECpartners for their review of, and contributions to, this document.

### A. References

#### A.1 Informative references


FIDO Registry of Predefined Values

FIDO Alliance Implementation Draft 27 February 2018

This version:  https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-id-20180227/fido-registry-v2.0-id-20180227.html
Previous version:  https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-ps-20170927/fido-registry-v2.0-ps-20170927.html
Editor:  Rolf Lindemann, Nok Nok Labs, Inc.
Contributors:  Davit Baghdasaryan, Nok Nok Labs, Inc.
Brad Hill, PayPal

Copyright © 2013-2018 FIDO Alliance All Rights Reserved.

Abstract

This document defines all the strings and constants reserved by FIDO protocols. The values defined in this document are referenced by various FIDO specifications.

Status of This Document

This section describes the status of this document at the time of its publication. Other documents may supersede this document. A list of current FIDO Alliance publications and the latest revision of this technical report can be found in the FIDO Alliance specifications index at https://www.fidoalliance.org/specifications/.

This document was published by the FIDO Alliance as a Implementation Draft. This document is intended to become a FIDO Alliance Proposed Standard. If you wish to make comments regarding this document, please Contact Us. All comments are welcome.

This Implementation Draft Specification has been prepared by FIDO Alliance, Inc. Permission is hereby granted to use the Specification solely for the purpose of implementing the Specification. No rights are granted to prepare derivative works of this Specification. Entities seeking permission to reproduce portions of this Specification for other uses must contact the FIDO Alliance to determine whether an appropriate license for such use is available.
Implementation of certain elements of this Specification may require licenses under third party intellectual property rights, including without limitation, patent rights. The FIDO Alliance, Inc. and its Members and any other contributors to the Specification are not, and shall not be held, responsible in any manner for identifying or failing to identify any or all such third party intellectual property rights.

THIS FIDO ALLIANCE SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Table of Contents

- 1. Notation
  - 1.1 Conformance
- 2. Overview
- 3. Authenticator Characteristics
  - 3.1 User Verification Methods
  - 3.2 Key Protection Types
  - 3.3 Matcher Protection Types
  - 3.4 Authenticator Attachment Hints
  - 3.5 Transaction Confirmation Display Types
  - 3.6 Tags used for crypto algorithms and types
    - 3.6.1 Authentication Algorithms
    - 3.6.2 Public Key Representation Formats
- A. References
  - A.1 Normative references
  - A.2 Informative references

1. Notation

Type names, attribute names and element names are written as `code`. String literals are enclosed in `"`, e.g. “UAF-TLV”.

In formulas we use “\(\)” to denote byte wise concatenation operations.

FIDO specific terminology used in this document is defined in [FIDOGlossary].

Some entries are marked as "(optional)" in this spec. The meaning of this is defined in other FIDO specifications referring to this document.

1.1 Conformance

As well as sections marked as non-normative, all authoring guidelines, diagrams, examples, and notes in this specification are non-normative. Everything else in this specification is normative.

The key words `must`, `must not`, `required`, `should`, `should not`, `recommended`, `may`, and `optional` in this specification are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].

2. Overview

This section is non-normative.

This document defines the registry of FIDO-specific constants common to multiple FIDO
protocol families. It is expected that, over time, new constants will be added to this registry. For example, new authentication algorithms and new types of authenticator characteristics will require new constants to be defined for use within the specifications.

3. Authenticator Characteristics

This section is normative.

3.1 User Verification Methods

The USER_VERIFY constants are flags in a bitfield represented as a 32-bit long integer. They describe the methods and capabilities of an UAF authenticator for locally verifying a user. The operational details of these methods are opaque to the server. These constants are used in the authoritative metadata for an authenticator, reported and queried through the UAF Discovery APIs, and used to form authenticator policies in UAF protocol messages.

All user verification methods must be performed locally by the authenticator in order to meet FIDO privacy principles.

**USER_VERIFY_PRESENCE 0x00000001**
This flag must be set if the authenticator is able to confirm user presence in any fashion. If this flag and no other is set for user verification, the guarantee is only that the authenticator cannot be operated without some human intervention, not necessarily that the sensing of "presence" provides any level of user verification (e.g., a device that requires a button press to activate).

**USER_VERIFY_FINGERPRINT 0x00000002**
This flag must be set if the authenticator uses any type of measurement of a fingerprint for user verification.

**USER_VERIFY_PASSCODE 0x00000004**
This flag must be set if the authenticator uses a local-only passcode (i.e., a passcode not known by the server) for user verification.

**USER_VERIFY_VOICEPRINT 0x00000008**
This flag must be set if the authenticator uses a voiceprint (also known as speaker recognition) for user verification.

**USER_VERIFY_FACEPRINT 0x00000010**
This flag must be set if the authenticator uses any manner of face recognition to verify the user.

**USER_VERIFY_LOCATION 0x00000020**
This flag must be set if the authenticator uses any form of location sensor or measurement for user verification.

**USER_VERIFY_EYEPRINT 0x00000040**
This flag must be set if the authenticator uses any form of eye biometrics for user verification.

**USER_VERIFY_PATTERN 0x00000080**
This flag must be set if the authenticator uses a drawn pattern for user verification.

**USER_VERIFY_HANDPRINT 0x00000100**
This flag must be set if the authenticator uses any measurement of a full hand (including palm-print, hand geometry or vein geometry) for user verification.

**USER_VERIFY_NONE 0x00000200**
This flag must be set if the authenticator will respond without any user interaction (e.g., Silent Authenticator).

**USER_VERIFY_ALL 0x00000400**
If an authenticator sets multiple flags for user verification types, it may also set this flag to indicate that all verification methods will be enforced (e.g., faceprint AND voiceprint). If flags for multiple user verification methods are set and this flag is not set, verification with only one is necessary (e.g., fingerprint OR passcode).

3.2 Key Protection Types

The KEY_PROTECTION constants are flags in a bitfield represented as a 16-bit long integer. They describe the method an authenticator uses to protect the private key material for FIDO registrations. Refer to [UAFAuthnrCommands] for more details on the relevance of keys and
key protection. These constants are used in the authoritative metadata for an authenticator, reported and queried through the UAF Discovery APIs, and used to form authenticator policies in UAF protocol messages.

When used in metadata describing an authenticator, several of these flags are exclusive of others (i.e. can not be combined) - the certified metadata may have at most one of the mutually exclusive bits set to 1. When used in authenticator policy, any bit may be set to 1, e.g. to indicate that a server is willing to accept authenticators using either KEY_PROTECTION_SOFTWARE or KEY_PROTECTION_HARDWARE.

NOTE

These flags must be set according to the effective security of the keys, in order to follow the assumptions made in [FIDOSecRef]. For example, if a key is stored in a secure element but software running on the FIDO User Device could call a function in the secure element to export the key either in the clear or using an arbitrary wrapping key, then the effective security is KEY_PROTECTION_SOFTWARE and not KEY_PROTECTION_SECURE_ELEMENT.

NOTE

These flags must be set according to the effective security of the matcher, in order to follow the assumptions made in [FIDOSecRef]. For example, if a passcode based matcher is implemented in a secure element, but the passcode is expected to be provided as unauthenticated parameter, then the effective security is

3.3 Matcher Protection Types

The MATCHER_PROTECTION constants are flags in a bit field represented as a 16 bit long integer. They describe the method an authenticator uses to protect the matcher that performs user verification. These constants are used in the authoritative metadata for an authenticator, reported and queried through the UAF Discovery APIs, and used to form authenticator policies in UAF protocol messages. Refer to [UAFAuthnrCommands] for more details on the matcher component.

NOTE

These flags must be set according to the effective security of the matcher, in order to follow the assumptions made in [FIDOSecRef]. For example, if a passcode based matcher is implemented in a secure element, but the passcode is expected to be provided as unauthenticated parameter, then the effective security is
MATCHER_PROTECTION_SOFTWARE 0x0001
This flag must be set if the authenticator’s matcher is running in software. Exclusive in authenticator metadata with MATCHER_PROTECTION_TEE, MATCHER_PROTECTION_ON_CHIP.

MATCHER_PROTECTION_TEE 0x0002
This flag should be set if the authenticator’s matcher is running inside the Trusted Execution Environment [TEE]. Mutually exclusive in authenticator metadata with MATCHER_PROTECTION_SOFTWARE, MATCHER_PROTECTION_ON_CHIP.

MATCHER_PROTECTION_ON_CHIP 0x0004
This flag should be set if the authenticator’s matcher is running on the chip. Mutually exclusive in authenticator metadata with MATCHER_PROTECTION_TEE, MATCHER_PROTECTION_SOFTWARE.

3.4 Authenticator Attachment Hints

The ATTACHMENT_HINT constants are flags in a bit field represented as a 32 bit long. They describe the method an authenticator uses to communicate with the FIDO User Device. These constants are reported and queried through the UAF Discovery APIs [UAFAppAPIAndTransport], and used to form Authenticator policies in UAF protocol messages. Because the connection state and topology of an authenticator may be transient, these values are only hints that can be used by server-supplied policy to guide the user experience, e.g. to prefer a device that is connected and ready for authenticating or confirming a low-value transaction, rather than one that is more secure but requires more user effort.

NOTE
These flags are not a mandatory part of authenticator metadata and, when present, only indicate possible states that may be reported during authenticator discovery.

ATTACHMENT_HINT_INTERNAL 0x0001
This flag may be set to indicate that the authenticator is permanently attached to the FIDO User Device.

A device such as a smartphone may have authenticator functionality that is able to be used both locally and remotely. In such a case, the FIDO client must filter and exclusively report only the relevant bit during Discovery and when performing policy matching.

This flag cannot be combined with any other ATTACHMENT_HINT flags.

ATTACHMENT_HINT_EXTERNAL 0x0002
This flag may be set to indicate, for a hardware-based authenticator, that it is removable or remote from the FIDO User Device.

A device such as a smartphone may have authenticator functionality that is able to be used both locally and remotely. In such a case, the FIDO UAF Client must filter and exclusively report only the relevant bit during discovery and when performing policy matching.

This flag must be combined with one or more other ATTACHMENT_HINT flag(s).

ATTACHMENT_HINT_WIRED 0x0004
This flag may be set to indicate that an external authenticator currently has an exclusive wired connection, e.g. through USB, Firewire or similar, to the FIDO User Device.

ATTACHMENT_HINT_WIRELESS 0x0008
This flag may be set to indicate that an external authenticator communicates with the FIDO User Device through a personal area or otherwise non-routed wireless protocol, such as Bluetooth or NFC.

ATTACHMENT_HINT_NFC 0x0010
This flag may be set to indicate that an external authenticator is able to communicate by NFC to the FIDO User Device. As part of authenticator metadata, or when reporting characteristics through discovery, if this flag is set, the ATTACHMENT_HINT_WIRELESS flag should also be set as well.

**ATTACHMENT_HINT_BLUETOOTH 0x0020**

This flag may be set to indicate that an external authenticator is able to communicate using Bluetooth with the FIDO User Device. As part of authenticator metadata, or when reporting characteristics through discovery, if this flag is set, the ATTACHMENT_HINT_WIRELESS flag should also be set.

**ATTACHMENT_HINT_NETWORK 0x0040**

This flag may be set to indicate that the authenticator is connected to the FIDO User Device over a non-exclusive network (e.g. over a TCP/IP LAN or WAN, as opposed to a PAN or point-to-point connection).

**ATTACHMENT_HINT_READY 0x0080**

This flag may be set to indicate that an external authenticator is in a "ready" state. This flag is set by the ASM at its discretion.

**ATTACHMENT_HINT_WIFI_DIRECT 0x0100**

This flag may be set to indicate that an external authenticator is able to communicate using WiFi Direct with the FIDO User Device. As part of authenticator metadata and when reporting characteristics through discovery, if this flag is set, the ATTACHMENT_HINT_WIRELESS flag should also be set.

### 3.5 Transaction Confirmation Display Types

The TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY constants are flags in a bit field represented as a 16 bit long integer. They describe the availability and implementation of a transaction confirmation display capability required for the transaction confirmation operation. These constants are used in the authoritative metadata for an authenticator, reported and queried through the UAF Discovery APIs, and used to form authenticator policies in UAF protocol messages. Refer to [UAFAuthnrCommands] for more details on the security aspects of TransactionConfirmation Display.

**TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATIONDISPLAY_ANY 0x0001**

This flag must be set to indicate that a transaction confirmation display, of any type, is available on this authenticator. Other TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY flags may also be set if this flag is set. If the authenticator does not support a transaction confirmation display, then the value of TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY must be set to 0.

**TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_PRIVILEGED_SOFTWARE 0x0002**

This flag must be set to indicate, that a software-based transaction confirmation display operating in a privileged context is available on this authenticator.

A FIDO client that is capable of providing this capability may set this bit (in conjunction with **TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_ANY**) for all authenticators of type ATTACHMENT_HINT_INTERNAL, even if the authoritative metadata for the authenticator does not indicate this capability.

**NOTE**

Generally this should indicate that the device is immediately available to perform user verification without additional actions such as connecting the device or creating a new biometric profile enrollment, but the exact meaning may vary for different types of devices. For example, a USB authenticator may only report itself as ready when it is plugged in, or a Bluetooth authenticator when it is paired and connected, but an NFC-based authenticator may always report itself as ready.

**NOTE**

Software based transaction confirmation displays might be implemented within
This flag is mutually exclusive with TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_TEE and TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_HARDWARE.

TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_TEE 0x0004
This flag should be set to indicate that the authenticator implements a transaction confirmation display in a Trusted Execution Environment ([TEE], [TEESEcureDisplay]). This flag is mutually exclusive with TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_PRIVILEGED_SOFTWARE and TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_HARDWARE.

TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_HARDWARE 0x0008
This flag should be set to indicate that a transaction confirmation display based on hardware assisted capabilities is available on this authenticator. This flag is mutually exclusive with TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_PRIVILEGED_SOFTWARE and TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_TEE.

TRANSACTION_CONFIRMATION_DISPLAY_REMOTE 0x0010
This flag should be set to indicate that the transaction confirmation display is provided on a distinct device from the FIDO User Device. This flag can be combined with any other flag.

3.6 Tags used for crypto algorithms and types

These tags indicate the specific authentication algorithms, public key formats and other crypto relevant data.

3.6.1 Authentication Algorithms

The ALG_SIGN constants are 16 bit long integers indicating the specific signature algorithm and encoding.

NOTE
FIDO UAF supports RAW and DER signature encodings in order to allow small footprint authenticator implementations.

ALG_SIGN_SECP256R1_ECDSA_SHA256_RAW 0x0001
An ECDSA signature on the NIST secp256r1 curve which must have raw R and S buffers, encoded in big-endian order. This is the signature encoding as specified in [ECDSA-ANSI].

I.e. [R (32 bytes), S (32 bytes)]

This algorithm is suitable for authenticators using the following key representation formats:

- ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_RAW
- ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_DER

ALG_SIGN_SECP256R1_ECDSA_SHA256_DER 0x0002

I.e. a DER encoded SEQUENCE { r INTEGER, s INTEGER }

This algorithm is suitable for authenticators using the following key representation formats:

- ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_RAW
RSASSA-PSS [RFC3447] signature must have raw S buffers, encoded in big-endian order [RFC4055] [RFC4056]. The default parameters as specified in [RFC4055] must be assumed, i.e.

- Mask Generation Algorithm MGF1 with SHA256
- Salt Length of 32 bytes, i.e. the length of a SHA256 hash value.
- Trailer Field value of 1, which represents the trailer field with hexadecimal value 0xBC.

I.e. [ S (256 bytes) ]

This algorithm is suitable for authenticators using the following key representation formats:

- ALG_KEY_RSA_2048_RAW
- ALG_KEY_RSA_2048_DER

DER [ITU-X690-2008] encoded OCTET STRING (not BIT STRING!) containing the RSASSA-PSS [RFC3447] signature [RFC4055] [RFC4056]. The default parameters as specified in [RFC4055] must be assumed, i.e.

- Mask Generation Algorithm MGF1 with SHA256
- Salt Length of 32 bytes, i.e. the length of a SHA256 hash value.
- Trailer Field value of 1, which represents the trailer field with hexadecimal value 0xBC.

I.e. a DER encoded OCTET STRING (including its tag and length bytes).

This algorithm is suitable for authenticators using the following key representation formats:

- ALG_KEY_RSA_2048_RAW
- ALG_KEY_RSA_2048_DER

An ECDSA signature on the secp256k1 curve which must have raw R and S buffers, encoded in big-endian order.

I.e. [R (32 bytes), S (32 bytes)]

This algorithm is suitable for authenticators using the following key representation formats:

- ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_RAW
- ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_DER
* ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_DER

**ALG_SIGN_SM2_SM3_RAW 0x0007 (optional)**
Chinese SM2 elliptic curve based signature algorithm combined with SM3 hash algorithm [OSCCA-SM2][OSCCA-SM3]. We use the 256bit curve [OSCCA-SM2-curve-param].

This algorithm is suitable for authenticators using the following key representation format: ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_RAW.

**ALG_SIGN_RSA_EMSA_PKCS1_SHA256_RAW 0x0008**
This is the EMSA-PKCS1-v1_5 signature as defined in [RFC3447]. This means that the encoded message EM will be the input to the cryptographic signing algorithm RSASP1 as defined in [RFC3447]. The result s of RSASP1 is then encoded using function I2OSP to produce the raw signature octets.

- EM = 0x00 | 0x01 | PS | 0x00 | T
  - with the padding string PS with length=emLen - tLen - 3 octets having the value 0xff for each octet, e.g. (0x) ff ff ff ff ff ff ff ff
  - with the DER [ITU-X690-2008] encoded DigestInfo value T: (0x)30 31 30 0d 06 09 60 86 48 01 65 03 04 02 01 05 00 04 20 | H, where H denotes the bytes of the SHA256 hash value.

This algorithm is suitable for authenticators using the following key representation formats:

- ALG_KEY_RSA_2048_RAW
- ALG_KEY_RSA_2048_DER

**NOTE**
Implementers should verify that their implementation of the PKCS#1 V1.5 signature follows the recommendations in [RFC3218] to protect against adaptive chosen-ciphertext attacks such as Bleichenbacher.

**ALG_SIGN_RSA_EMSA_PKCS1_SHA256_DER 0x0009**
DER [ITU-X690-2008] encoded OCTET STRING (not BIT STRING!) containing the EMSA-PKCS1-v1_5 signature as defined in [RFC3447]. This means that the encoded message EM will be the input to the cryptographic signing algorithm RSASP1 as defined in [RFC3447]. The result s of RSASP1 is then encoded using function I2OSP to produce the raw signature. The raw signature is DER [ITU-X690-2008] encoded as an OCTET STRING to produce the final signature octets.

- EM = 0x00 | 0x01 | PS | 0x00 | T
  - with the padding string PS with length=emLen - tLen - 3 octets having the value 0xff for each octet, e.g. (0x) ff ff ff ff ff ff ff ff
  - with the DER encoded DigestInfo value T: (0x)30 31 30 0d 06 09 60 86 48 01 65 03 04 02 01 05 00 04 20 | H, where H denotes the bytes of the SHA256 hash value.

This algorithm is suitable for authenticators using the following key representation formats:

- ALG_KEY_RSA_2048_RAW
- ALG_KEY_RSA_2048_DER

**NOTE**
3.6.2 Public Key Representation Formats

The **ALG_KEY** constants are 16 bit long integers indicating the specific Public Key algorithm and encoding.

**NOTE**

FIDO UAF supports RAW and DER encodings in order to allow small footprint authenticator implementations. By definition, the authenticator must encode the public key as part of the registration assertion.

### ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_RAW 0x0100

Raw ANSI X9.62 formatted Elliptic Curve public key [SEC1].

I.e. [0x04, X (32 bytes), Y (32 bytes)]. Where the byte 0x04 denotes the uncompressed point compression method.

### ALG_KEY_ECC_X962_DER 0x0101


I.e. a DER encoded SubjectPublicKeyInfo as defined in [RFC5480].

Authenticator implementations must generate namedCurve in the ECParameters object which is included in the AlgorithmIdentifier. A FIDO UAF Server must accept namedCurve in the ECParameters object which is included in the AlgorithmIdentifier.

### ALG_KEY_RSA_2048_RAW 0x0102

Raw encoded 2048-bit RSA public key [RFC3447].

That is, [n (256 bytes), e (N-256 bytes)]. Where N is the total length of the field.

This total length should be taken from the object containing this key, e.g. the TLV encoded field.

### ALG_KEY_RSA_2048_DER 0x0103


That is a DER encoded SEQUENCE { n INTEGER, e INTEGER }.

### ALG_KEY_COSE 0x0104

COSE_Key format, as defined in Section 7 of [RFC8152]. This encoding includes its own field for indicating the public key algorithm.

A. References

A.1 Normative references

[FIDOGLOSSARY]


[ITU-X690-2008]

[OSCCA-SM2]

[OSCCA-SM2-curve-param]

[OSCCA-SM3]

[RFC2119]

[RFC3447]

[RFC4055]

[RFC4056]

[RFC5480]

[RFC8152]

[SEC1]

A.2 Informative references

[ECDSA-ANSI]

[FIDOSecRef]
R. Lindemann; D. Baghdasaryan; B. Hill. FIDO Security Reference. Implementation Draft. URL: https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-v2.0-id-20180227/fido-security-ref-v2.0-id-20180227.html

[RFC3218]

[SecureElement]
GlobalPlatform Card Specifications. URL: https://www.globalplatform.org/specifications.asp

[TEE]
GlobalPlatform Trusted Execution Environment Specifications. URL: https://www.globalplatform.org/specifications.asp

[TEESecureDisplay]
GlobalPlatform Trusted User Interface API Specifications. URL: https://www.globalplatform.org/specifications.asp

[UAFASM]

[UAFAppAPIAndTransport]

[UAFAuthnrCommands]

[UAFProtocol]
Abstract

This document defines all the strings and constants reserved by UAF protocols. The values defined in this document are referenced by various UAF specifications.

Status of This Document

This section describes the status of this document at the time of its publication. Other documents may supersede this document. A list of current FIDO Alliance publications and the latest revision of this technical report can be found in the FIDO Alliance specifications index at https://www.fidoalliance.org/specifications/.

This document was published by the FIDO Alliance as a Implementation Draft. This document is intended to become a FIDO Alliance Proposed Standard. If you wish to make comments regarding this document, please Contact Us. All comments are welcome.

This Implementation Draft Specification has been prepared by FIDO Alliance, Inc.
Permission is hereby granted to use the Specification solely for the purpose of implementing the Specification. No rights are granted to prepare derivative works of this Specification. Entities seeking permission to reproduce portions of this Specification for other uses must
Table of Contents

- 1. Notation
  - 1.1 Key Words
- 2. Introduction
- 3. Definitions
- A. References
  - A.1 Normative references
  - A.2 Informative references

1. Notation

Type names, attribute names and element names are written as code.

String literals are enclosed in “”, e.g. “UAF-TLV”.

In formulas we use “|” to denote byte wise concatenation operations.

1.1 Key Words

The key words “must”, “must not”, “required”, “shall”, “shall not”, “should”, “should not”, “recommended”, “may”, and “optional” in this document are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].

2. Introduction

This document is the FIDO Alliance glossary of normative technical terms.

This document is not an exhaustive compendium of all FIDO technical terminology because the FIDO terminology is built upon existing terminology. Thus many terms that are commonly used within this context are not listed. They may be found in the glossaries/documents/specifications referenced in the bibliography. Terms defined here that are not attributed to other glossaries/documents/specifications are being defined here.

This glossary is expected to evolve along with the FIDO Alliance specifications and documents.

3. Definitions

AAID

Authenticator Attestation ID. See Attestation ID.

Application
A set of functionality provided by a common entity (the application owner, aka the
Relying Party), and perceived by the user as belonging together.

**Application Facet**

An (application) facet is how an application is implemented on various platforms. For example, the application MyBank may have an Android app, an iOS app, and a Web app. These are all facets of the MyBank application.

**Application Facet ID**

A platform-specific identifier (URI) for an application facet.

- For Web applications, the facet id is the RFC6454 origin [RFC6454].
- For Android applications, the facet id is the URI android:apk-key-hash<hash-of-apk-signing-cert>
- For iOS, the facet id is the URI ios:bundle-id<ios-bundle-id-of-app>

**AppID**

The AppID is an identifier for a set of different Facets of a relying party's application. The AppID is a URL pointing to the TrustedFacets, i.e. list of FacetIDs related to this AppID.

**Attestation**

In the FIDO context, attestation is how Authenticators make claims to a Relying Party that the keys they generate, and/or certain measurements they report, originate from genuine devices with certified characteristics.

**Attestation Certificate**

A public key certificate related to an Attestation Key.

**Authenticator Attestation ID / AAID**

A unique identifier assigned to a model, class or batch of FIDO Authenticators that all share the same characteristics, and which a Relying Party can use to look up an Attestation Public Key and Authenticator Metadata for the device.

**Attestation [Public / Private] Key**

A key used for FIDO Authenticator attestation.

**Attestation Root Certificate**

A root certificate explicitly trusted by the FIDO Alliance, to which Attestation Certificates chain to.

**Authentication**

Authentication is the process in which user employs their FIDO Authenticator to prove possession of a registered key to a relying party.

**Authentication Algorithm**

The combination of signature and hash algorithms used for authenticator-to-relying party authentication.

**Authentication Scheme**

The combination of an Authentication Algorithm with a message syntax or framing that is used by an Authenticator when constructing a response.
Authenticator, Authnr

See FIDO Authenticator.

Authenticator, 1stF / First Factor

A FIDO Authenticator that transactionally provides a username and at least two authentication factors: cryptographic key material (something you have) plus user verification (something you know / something you are) and so can be used by itself to complete an authentication.

It is assumed that these authenticators have an internal matcher. The matcher is able to verify an already enrolled user. If there is more than one user enrolled – the matcher also is able to identify the right user.

Examples of such authenticator is a biometric sensor or a PIN based verification. Authenticators which only verify presence, such as a physical button, or perform no verification at all, cannot act as a first-factor authenticator.

Authenticator, 2ndF / Second Factor

A FIDO Authenticator which acts only as a second factor. Second-factor authenticators always require a single key handle to be provided before responding to a sign command. They might or might not have a user verification method. It is assumed that these authenticators may or may not have an internal matcher.

Authenticator Attestation

The process of communicating a cryptographic assertion to a relying party that a key presented during authenticator registration was created and protected by a genuine authenticator with verified characteristics.

Authenticator Metadata

Verified information about the characteristics of a certified authenticator, associated with an AAID and available from the FIDO Alliance. FIDO Servers are expected to have access to up-to-date metadata to be able to interact with a given authenticator.

Authenticator Policy

A JSON data structure that allows a relying party to communicate to a FIDO Client the capabilities or specific authenticators that are allowed or disallowed for use in a given operation.

ASM / Authenticator Specific Module

Software associated with a FIDO Authenticator that provides a uniform interface between the hardware and FIDO Client software.

AV

ASM Version

Bound Authenticator

A FIDO Authenticator or combination of authenticator and ASM, which uses an access control mechanism to restrict the use of registered keys to trusted FIDO Clients and/or trusted FIDO User Devices. Compare to a Roaming Authenticator.

Certificate

An X.509v3 certificate defined by the profile specified in [RFC5280] and its successors.

Channel Binding

See: [RFC5056], [RFC5929] and [ChannelID]. A channel binding allows applications to establish that the two end-points of a secure channel at one network layer are the same as at a higher layer by binding authentication to the higher layer to the channel at the
lower layer.

**Client**

This term is used “in context”, and may refer to a FIDO UAF Client or some other type of client, e.g. a TLS client. See FIDO Client.

**Confused Deputy Problem**

A confused deputy is a computer program that is innocently fooled by some other party into misusing its authority. It is a specific type of privilege escalation.

**Correlation Handle**

Any piece of information that may allow, in the context of FIDO protocols, implicit or explicit association and or attribution of multiple actions, believed by the user to be distinct and unrelated, back to a single unique entity. An example of a correlation handle outside of the FIDO context is a client certificate used in traditional TLS mutual authentication: because it sends the same data to multiple Relying Parties, they can therefore collude to uniquely identify and track the user across unrelated activities. [AnonTerminology]

**Deregistration**

A phase of a FIDO protocol in which a Relying Party tells a FIDO Authenticator to forget a specified piece of (or all) locally managed key material associated with a specific Relying Party account, in case such keys are no longer considered valid by the Relying Party.

**Discovery**

A phase of a FIDO protocol in which a Relying Party is able to determine the availability of FIDO capabilities at the client’s device, including metadata about the available authenticators.

**E(K,D)**

Denotes the Encryption of data D with key K

**ECDAA**

Elliptic Curve based Direct Anonymous Attestation. ECDAA is an attestation scheme alternative to FIDO Basic Attestation. It is an improved Direct Anonymous Attestation scheme based on elliptic curves and bilinear pairings. Direct Anonymous Attestation schemes use individual private keys in the Authenticator while avoiding global correlation handles. ECDAA provides significantly improved performance compared with the original DAA scheme. FIDO ECDAA [FIDOEcdaaAlgorithm] defines object encodings, pairing friendly curves etc. in order to lead to interoperable ECDAA implementations across different FIDO Servers and FIDO Authenticators.

**ECDSA**

Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm, as defined by ANSI X9.62 [ECDSA-ANSI].

**Enrollment**

The process of making a user known to an authenticator. This might be a biometric enrollment as defined in [NSTCBiometrics] or involve processes such as taking ownership of, and setting a PIN or password for, a non-biometric cryptographic storage device. Enrollment may happen as part of a FIDO protocol ceremony, or it may happen outside of the FIDO context for multi-purpose authenticators.

**Facet**
FIDO Authenticator

An authentication entity that meets the FIDO Alliance's requirements and which has related metadata.

A FIDO Authenticator is responsible for user verification, and maintaining the cryptographic material required for the relying party authentication.

It is important to note that a FIDO Authenticator is only considered such for, and in relation to, its participation in FIDO Alliance protocols. Because the FIDO Alliance aims to utilize a diversity of existing and future hardware, many devices used for FIDO may have other primary or secondary uses. To the extent that a device is used for non-FIDO purposes such as local operating system login or network login with non-FIDO protocols, it is not considered a FIDO Authenticator and its operation in such modes is not subject to FIDO Alliance guidelines or restrictions, including those related to security and privacy.

A FIDO Authenticator may be referred to as simply an authenticator or abbreviated as “authnr”. Important distinctions in an authenticator’s capabilities and user experience may be experienced depending on whether it is a roaming or bound authenticator, and whether it is a first-factor, or second-factor authenticator.

It is assumed by registration assertion schemes that the authenticator has exclusive control over the data being signed by the attestation key.

Authenticators specify in the Metadata Statement whether they have exclusive control over the data being signed by the Uauth key.

FIDO Client

This is the software entity processing the UAF or U2F protocol messages on the FIDO User Device. FIDO Clients may take one of two forms:

- A software component implemented in a user agent (either web browser or native application).
- A standalone piece of software shared by several user agents. (web browsers or native applications).

FIDO Data / FIDO Information

Any information gathered or created as part of completing a FIDO transaction. This includes but is not limited to, biometric measurements of or reference data for the user and FIDO transaction history.

FIDO Server

Server software typically deployed in the relying party’s infrastructure that meets UAF protocol server requirements.

FIDO UAF Client

See FIDO Client.

FIDO User Device

The computing device where the FIDO Client operates, and from which the user initiates an action that utilizes FIDO.
Key Identifier (KeyID)

The KeyID is an opaque identifier for a key registered by an authenticator with a FIDO Server, for first-factor authenticators. It is used in concert with an AAID to identify a particular authenticator that holds the necessary key. Thus key identifiers must be unique within the scope of an AAID.

One possible implementation is that the KeyID is the SHA256 hash of the KeyHandle managed by the ASM.

KeyHandle

A key container created by a FIDO Authenticator, containing a private key and (optionally) other data (such as Username). A key handle may be wrapped (encrypted with a key known only to the authenticator) or unwrapped. In the unwrapped form it is referred to as a raw key handle. Second-factor authenticators must retrieve their key handles from the relying party to function. First-factor authenticators manage the storage of their own key handles, either internally (for roaming authenticators) or via the associated ASM (for bound authenticators).

Key Registration

The process of securely establishing a key between FIDO Server and FIDO Authenticator.

KeyRegistrationData (KRD)

A KeyRegistrationData object is created and returned by an authenticator as the result of the authenticator's Register command. The KRD object contains items such as the authenticator's AAID, the newly generated UAuth.pub key, as well as other authenticator-specific information such as algorithms used by the authenticator for performing cryptographic operations, and counter values. The KRD object is signed using the authenticator's attestation private key.

KHAccessToken

A secret value that acts as a guard for authenticator commands. KHAccessTokens are generated and provided by an ASM.

Matcher

A component of a FIDO Authenticator which is able to perform (local) user verification, e.g. biometric comparison [ISOBiometrics], PIN verification, etc.

Matcher Protections

The security mechanisms that an authenticator may use to protect the matcher component.

Persona

All relevant data stored in an authenticator (e.g. cryptographic keys) are related to a single "persona" (e.g. “business” or “personal” persona). Some administrative interface (not standardized by FIDO) provided by the authenticator may allow maintenance and switching of personas.

The user can switch to the “Personal” Persona and register new accounts. After switching back to the “Business” Persona, these accounts will not be recognized by the authenticator (until the User switches back to “Personal” Persona again).

This mechanism may be used to provide an additional measure of privacy to the user, where the user wishes to use the same authenticator in multiple contexts, without allowing correlation via the authenticator across those contexts.

PersonalID
An identifier provided by an ASM, PersonaID is used to associate different registrations. It can be used to create virtual identities on a single authenticator, for example to differentiate “personal” and “business” accounts. PersonalIDs can be used to manage privacy settings on the authenticator.

Reference Data

A (biometric) reference data (also called template) is a digital reference of distinct characteristics that have been extracted from a biometric sample. Biometric reference data is used during the biometric user verification process [ISOBiometrics]. Non-biometric reference data is used in conjunction with PIN-based user verification.

Registration

A FIDO protocol operation in which a user generates and associates new key material with an account at the Relying Party, subject to policy set by the server, and acceptable attestation that the authenticator and registration matches that policy.

Registration Scheme

The registration scheme defines how the authentication key is being exchanged between the FIDO Server and the FIDO Authenticator.

Relying Party

A web site or other entity that uses a FIDO protocol to directly authenticate users (i.e., performs peer-entity authentication). Note that if FIDO is composed with federated identity management protocols (e.g., SAML, OpenID Connect, etc.), the identity provider will also be playing the role of a FIDO Relying Party.

Roaming Authenticator

A FIDO Authenticator configured to move between different FIDO Clients and FIDO User Devices lacking an established trust relationship by:

1. Using only its own internal storage for registrations
2. Allowing registered keys to be employed without access control mechanisms at the API layer. (Roaming authenticators still may perform user verification.)

Compare to Bound Authenticator.

\( S(K, D) \)

Signing of data D with key K

Server Challenge

A random value provided by the FIDO Server in the UAF protocol requests.

Sign Counter

A monotonically increasing counter maintained by the Authenticator. It is increased on every use of the UAuth.priv key. This value can be used by the FIDO Server to detect cloned authenticators.

SignedData

A SignedData object is created and returned by an authenticator as the result of the authenticator’s Sign command. The to-be-signed data input to the signature operation is represented in the returned SignedData object as intact values or as hashed values. The SignedData object also contains general information about the authenticator and its mode, a nonce, information about authenticator-specific cryptographic algorithms, and a use counter. The SignedData object is signed using a relying party-specific
Silent Authenticator

FIDO Authenticator that does not prompt the user or perform any user verification.

Step-up Authentication

An authentication which is performed on top of an already authenticated session.

Example: The user authenticates the session initially using a username and password, and the web site later requests a FIDO authentication on top of this authenticated session.

One reason for requesting step-up authentication could be a request for a high value resource.

FIDO U2F is always used as a step-up authentication. FIDO UAF could be used as step-up authentication, but it could also be used as an initial authentication mechanism.

Note: In general, there is no implication that the step-up authentication method itself is "stronger" than the initial authentication. Since the step-up authentication is performed on top of an existing authentication, the resulting combined authentication strength will increase most likely, but it will never decrease.

Template

See reference data.

Test of User Presence

See User Presence Check

TLS

Transport Layer Security

Token

In FIDO U2F, the term Token is often used to mean what is called an authenticator in UAF. Also, note that other uses of "token", e.g. KHAccessToken, User Verification Token, etc., are separately distinct. If they are not explicitly defined, their meaning needs to be determined from context.

Transaction Confirmation

An operation in the FIDO protocol that allows a relying party to request that a FIDO Client, and authenticator with the appropriate capabilities, display some information to the user, request that the user authenticate locally to their FIDO Authenticator to confirm the information, and provide proof-of-possession of previously registered key material and an attestation of the confirmation back to the relying party.

Transaction Confirmation Display

This is a feature of FIDO Authenticators able to show content of a message to a user, and protect the integrity of this message. It could be implemented using the GlobalPlatform specified TrustedUI [TEESecureDisplay].

TrustedFacets

The data structure holding a list of trusted FacetIDs. The AppID is used to retrieve this data structure.
Transaction Text, i.e. text to be confirmed in the case of transaction confirmation.

**Type-length-value/tag-length-value (TLV)**

A mechanism for encoding data such that the type, length and value of the data are given. Typically, the type and length data fields are of a fixed size. This format offers some advantages over other data encoding mechanisms, that make it suitable for some of the FIDO UAF protocols.

**Universal Second Factor (U2F)**

The FIDO protocol and family of authenticators which enable a cloud service to offer its users the options of using an easy–to–use, strongly–secure open standards–based second-factor device for authentication. The protocol relies on the server to know the (expected) user before triggering the authentication.

**Universal Authentication Framework (UAF)**

The FIDO Protocol and family of authenticators which enable a service to offer its users flexible and interoperable authentication. This protocol allows triggering the authentication before the server knows the user.

**UAF Client**

See FIDO Client.

**UAuth.pub / UAuth.priv / UAuth.key**

User authentication keys generated by FIDO Authenticator. UAuth.pub is the public part of key pair. UAuth.priv is the private part of the key. UAuth.key is the more generic notation to refer to UAuth.priv.

**UINT8**

An 8 bit (1 byte) unsigned integer.

**UINT16**

A 16 bit (2 bytes) unsigned integer.

**UINT32**

A 32 bit (4 bytes) unsigned integer.

**UPV**

UAF Protocol Version

**User**

Relying party’s user, and owner of the FIDO Authenticator.

**User Agent**

The user agent is a client application that is acting on behalf of a user in a client-server system. Examples of user agents include web browsers and mobile apps.

**User Presence Check**

The User Presence check in the authenticator verifies that some user is present at the authenticator and agrees with a generic authentication operation.

**User Verification**
The process by which a FIDO Authenticator locally authorizes use of key material, for example through a touch, pin code, fingerprint match or other biometric.

**User Verification Token**

The user verification token is generated by Authenticator and handed to the ASM after successful user verification. Without having this token, the ASM cannot invoke special commands such as **Register** or **Sign**.

The lifecycle of the user verification token is managed by the authenticator. The concrete techniques for generating such a token and managing its lifecycle are vendor-specific and non-normative.

**Username**

A human-readable string identifying a user's account at a relying party.

**Verification Factor**

The specific means by which local user verification is accomplished. e.g. fingerprint, voiceprint, or PIN.

This is also known as modality.

**Web Application, Client-Side**

The portion of a relying party application built on the "Open Web Platform" which executes in the context of the user agent. When the term “Web Application” appears unqualified or without specific context in FIDO documents, it generally refers to either the client-side portion or the combination of both client-side and server-side pieces of such an application.

**Web Application, Server-Side**

The portion of a relying party application that executes on the web server, and responds to HTTP requests. When the term “Web Application” appears unqualified or without specific context in FIDO documents, it generally refers to either the client-side portion or the combination of both client-side and server-side pieces of such an application.

A. References

A.1 Normative references


A.2 Informative references


[ECDSA-ANSI] **Public Key Cryptography for the Financial Services Industry - Key Agreement and Key...**